





定价: 9.90元 价格批准文号: 闽发改服价 [2021]380号 价格投诉举报电话: 12315





义务教育教科书

J E

Project English

九年级 上册





科学普及出版社 POPULAR SCIENCE PRESS

义务教育教科书





Project English

九年级 上册

北京市仁爱教育研究所 编著

主 编 王徳春

Jim Greenlaw (加拿大)

副主编 杨晓钰

编 者 Robert White (加拿大)

Martin McDonald (加拿大)

杨晓钰 周 澜 王惠静

张翼万普



科学普及出版社

·北 京·

图书在版编目(CIP)数据

英语. 九年级. 上册 / 北京市仁爱教育研究所编著. 一北京 : 科学普及出版社, 2014.7 (2021.6重印) 义务教育教科书 ISBN 978-7-110-08573-8

I. ①英··· II. ①北··· III. ①英语课一初中一教材 IV. ①G634.411

中国版本图书馆CIP数据核字(2014)第058779号

策划编辑 徐扬科 许 倩 责任编辑 林 然 责任印制 徐 飞



是仁爱版教材的商标

仁爱版教材推广及服务中心电话 4008100168 010-82676936 13911468451

义务教育教科书

英 语

九年级 上册

北京市仁爱教育研究所 编著

*

科学普及出版社 (北京市海淀区中关村南大街16号) 邮政编码: 100081 福建新华发行(集团)有限责任公司发行 北京利丰雅高长城印刷有限公司印刷

*

787mm×1092mm 16开 10印张 200千字 2014年7月第1版 2021年6月第80次印刷

ISBN 978-7-110-08573-8/G·3623

定价: 9.90 元

著作权所有,请勿擅用本书制作各类出版物,违者必究。

如有质量问题,影响阅读,请与北京市仁爱教育研究所联系调换。 地址:北京市海淀区北四环西路68号左岸工社12层 邮编:100080

网址: http://www.renai-edu.com 邮箱: editor@renai-edu.com

前言

亲爱的同学们:

你们好!欢迎你们学习使用仁爱版初中英语教材, 与我们共同开启初中英语学习的大门!

仁爱版初中英语教材是由加拿大英语专家Jim Greenlaw 博士和北京市仁爱教育研究所数十位英语专家及中国最优秀的英语教师依据教育部《义务教育英语课程标准(2011年版)》,针对中国5000多万初中学生的英语学



习现状编写而成的初中英语教材,它将陪伴你们度过绚丽斑斓的初中生活。

通过七、八年级的学习,你们已经具备了一定的英语语言知识和技能。在九年级阶段,你们的综合语言运用能力将得到进一步的提升。在本册教材中,共有四个话题与大家分享:家乡的变化、环境与环保、英语学习和新奇的科学技术。新的学期到了,康康和他的小伙伴儿们各自在假期做了哪些有意义的事情呢?简参加了环保小组,你们想知道如何成为一名环保者吗?康康他们班在班会上交流了一些学习英语的好方法,都是哪些方法呢?迈克尔和简参观了科学博物馆,他们都了解了哪些发明呢?通过本册教材的学习,你们就会得到答案了。相信你们会乐意融入到他们的学习、生活中,并逐步地学会用英语谈论这些话题;你们还将有很多机会参与到双人或小组活动中去,与同伴们一起用英语完成任务,如:角色表演、制作海报、评价学习等有趣的活动,并在每个话题结束时表演或展示自已的作品。

伴随这些有趣的故事和活动,你们将学到一些比前几册教材里更为复杂的语言结构,如现在完成时、被动语态和定语从句等。这些知识会使你们能运用更丰富的英语语言来进行表达。教材的语音学习部分将着重展现语篇中的语音,帮助你们运用七、八年级所学的语音知识进行综合的训练。你们熟悉的金钥匙会依然给出一些有效的学习方法。

此外,由于我国现阶段还有少部分农村地区因**师资欠缺、开课不足**等原因使该部分地区的孩子们的**英语基础十分薄弱**,为此**我们在七年级上册设计并调整了第一单元作为预备学习单元**,供你们选用。

同学们,希望你们能积极热情地参与教材中的活动、享受英语学习的乐趣,使你们的 听说读写能力得到全面的提高!我们相信只要认真地将整套六册仁爱版初中英语教材学 完,你们都能达到教育部《义务教育英语课程标准(2011年版)》的五级英语水平要求, 并能满怀信心地迎接未来每一天的挑战。

Main Characters in the Book



Guide to Project English 使用指南

TOPIC 2

TOPIC 2 I'm excited about the things that will be discovered in the future.



1a Listen, look and say.

Kangkang: Hi, Maria! A wonderful movie will be shown tonight. Shall we go to

Great! What's it about? Kangkang: It's about life in space. That sounds exciting.



Kangkang: Yes. All the people travel by spaceship in the movie, and they can visit planets like Mars.

Maria: Really? Kangkang, do you think people will live on Mars in the

Kangkang: Yes. I think we will live in space one day. Houses, schools and hospitals will be built on Mars. We will be able to do anything that can be done on the earth.

Maria: What fim! I can't wait.

1b Listen to 1a and answer the questions. Then check the answers in pairs.

- 1. When will the movie be shown?
- 2. What's the movie about?
- 3. How do people travel in the movie?
- 4. What will be built on Mars according to Kangkang?
- 1C Read 1a and complete Maria's diary.

Į	-	December 8th	n, Tucsday	Cloudy
9	603		g and I are excited, because a	wonderful movie
a	630	tonight. The p	oster says it's about	In the movie, all the people
d	60	travel	and they can visit	
1	93)	Kangkan	g thinks we will live	one day. Houses, schools
Į	-	and hospitals	on Mars. We w	ill be able to do that
1	437	can be done	n earth. I think we will be ab	le to fly everywhere in the future.
9	0	I hope our dre	eams of space travel will com	ie true.

帮助学生养成良好的学习习 惯,形成科学的学习方法, 从而提高学习效率。成为真 正的自主学习者。

以各单元所学内容为基础, 通 过各种语音活动帮助学生应用 所学语音知识, 养成自然规范 的语音语调, 为有效的口语交 际打下良好的基础。

Section A 和 Section B 以 对话形式在真实的语境中呈现 新的语言材料, 为语言的输出 做准备。

在看图理解的基础上听懂对 话、通过不同的听力活动、帮 助学生完成对新材料的理解。 提高其听说能力。

000000000000

2 Listen to the passage and choose the corr

1. How many shapes of UFOs were mentioned?

B. Five. C. Six. A. Four. 2. In which area of China did the UFOs often appear?

A. Nanjing. C. The north of Changjiang River.

3. Why do people know little about UFOs?

A. UFOs have been met by so many people

B. There are various shapes of UFOs.

C. A UFO is only met by chance and disappears rapidly.

Look at the pictures and complete the sentences by following the example: Then read the dialogs aloud and pay attention to the stress and intonation.



Example:

A: How is the 'cake, Jane?

B: Tust a 'minute. It will be 'finished 'very 'soon.

A: The 'article 'says the 'houses under the 'ses in the near future B: It's really 'cool to 'live under the 'sca.



A: Can you 'believe it? Our 'car by robots in the future? B: It 'sounds 'great.

A: Have you heard the news on TV? More plan in the 'universe. B: 'No, I haven't. I think 'most of our 'dreams in the 'future.



3b Make up your own dialogs about the future with the structure u in 3a

92





1a Read and understand.

Look at the pictures and predict which statements are true about Mars. Then read the passage quickly and check the answers.

- Mars looks like a red ball.
- 2. The temperature on Mars is very high
- 3. Mars is much larger than the earth.
 - 4. Mars is too far away for us to reach.

What do you know about Mars? What does it look like?

Mars is the fourth planet from the sun in our solar system and is named after Mars, the Roman god of war. Its diameter is 53% as wide as that of the earth. Mars goes around the sun at a distance of about 228 million kilometers. You can tell which planet is Mars because it is bright red in



the night sky. It looks like a red and orange ball. It's very beautiful. But during spring and summer, the surface of Mars is covered by strong storms. The gravity



on the surface of Mars is about two-fifths as strong as it is on earth. So a person who weighs 90 kilos on earth weighs only 36 kilos on Mars. The temperature on Mars is between -138°C and 28°C. The air has only 0.13% oxygen.

It takes a spaceship about eight months to reach Mars from the earth when the two planets are closest to each other. Scientists are still searching for more information about Mars.

1b Read 1a again and write down the information about Mars.

Diameter	Color	Shape
Climate	Gravity	Distance from the sun

93

精选题材丰富的阅读材料及 形式多样的读前活动。

通过各种形式的阅读活动, 帮助学生实现课程标准要求的各种阅读技能目标, 以及 学握基本的阅读技能, 为他 们成为高效的阅读者打下良好的基础。

贯彻过程性写作理念,以意义 表达为核心目标,同时关注语 言形式的使用。体现综合技能 训练的理念,将听、说、读的 技能与写作有机结合,并结合 单元相关话题的写作活动,提 高目标语的写作能力。

words to complete the letter. The Jones has poor very will. Analysing. as been two days	2. Is Mars a confortable place for human beings to live? 4. Is Mars a comfortable place for heavy people? Kangkang's uncle sent an e-mall to him from Mars. Choose the right words to complete the letter. This Journal has poor very well. **This Journal has poor very well. **Angkang.** **Has been two days (since, from) we landed on Mars. It set, took) us more than two years to (reach, get) here. Generally, the mery went well, but the living conditions were (quiett, quite) bad during to journey. We had to produce most of the food in the spaceship (What's re, What's worse), our water supplies were very low. We had to limit the use of ter during (these, those) days. So we had a shower every six weeks. will spend another seven hundred and soty-three days on Mars (How, at) a long time! I often miss the family, but the excitement of being on Mars is rith it! sh me luck!	2. Is Mars a cuscial place to dry fruit? 3. Is Mars a good place for human beings to live? 4. Is Mars a comfortable place for heavy people? Kangkang's uncle sent an e-mall to him from Mars. Choose the right words to complete the letter. The lower has soor very will. **The lower has soor very will. **Standars** **A ** A ** A ** A ** A ** A ** A *	2. Is Mars a useful place to dry fruit? 3. Is Mars a good place for human beings to live? 4. Is Mars a comfortable place for heavy people? Kangkang's uncle sent an e-mall to him from Mars. Choose the righ words to complete the letter.	2. Is Mars a useful place to dry fruit? 3. Is Mars a good place for human beings to live? 4. Is Mars a comfortable place for heavy people? Kangkang's uncle sent an e-mall to him from Mars. Choose the right words to complete the letter. The Journey has goer very will. Kangkang. has been two days set, took) us more than two years to	gs to live? y people? I to him from Mars. Choose the righ
3. Is Mars a good place for human beings to live? 4. Is Mars a comfortable place for heavy people? Kangkang's uncle sent an e-mail to him from Mars. Choose the right words to complete the letter. This immery has pass very will. Analysis and the letter in the letter is an experiment of the letter in the letter is an experiment of the let	3. Is Mars a good place for human beings to live? 4. Is Mars a comfortable place for heavy people? Kangkang's uncle sent an e-mall to him from Mars. Choose the right words to complete the letter. This breaks has poor vety well. This breaks has poor vety well. Kangkang. In the letter of the	3. Is Mars a good place for human beings to live? 4. Is Mars a comfortable place for heavy people? Kangkang's uncle sent an e-mall to him from Mars. Choose the right words to complete the letter. This breaks has poor vety well. This breaks has poor vety well. Kangkang. In the letter of the	3. Is Mars a good place for human beings to live? 4. Is Mars a comfortable place for heavy people? Kangkang's uncle sent an e-mall to him from Mars. Choose the righ words to complete the letter. This Journey has good very well. This Journey has good very well. Kangkang. has been two days (since, from) we landed on Mars. It set, took) us more than two years to [reach, get) here. Generally, the cost, took) us more than two years to for the produce most of the food in the spaceship. [What's ore, What's worse), our water supplies were very low. We had to limit the use of atter during (these, those) days. So we had a shower every six weeks. (Thow, hat) a long timel I often miss the family, but the excitement of being on Mars is with it! Is have likely the service of the family, but the excitement of being on Mars is with it!	3. Is Mars a good place for human beings to live? 4. Is Mars a comfortable place for heavy people? Kangkang's uncle sent an e-mall to him from Mars. Choose the right words to complete the letter. This bears has poor very well. This bears has poor very well. Kangkang. (since, from) we landed on Mars. It	y people? I to him from Mars. Choose the righ
4. Is Mars a comfortable place for heavy people? Kangkang's uncle sent an e-mall to him from Mars. Choose the right words to complete the letter. This search as poor very will. Analysis in the FARMING of the letter in the property of the letter in the	4. Is Mars a comfortable place for heavy people? Kangkang's uncle sent an e-mall to him from Mars. Choose the right words to complete the letter. The lower has soor very well. As been two days	4. Is Mars a comfortable place for heavy people? Kangkang's uncle sent an e-mall to him from Mars. Choose the right words to complete the letter. The lower has soor very well. As been two days	4. Is Mars a comfortable place for heavy people? Kangkang's uncle sent an e-mall to him from Mars. Choose the righ words to complete the letter. The Jordan has gon very well. Let halans 19 Selection of the complete the letter. (since, from) we landed on Mars. It cost, took) us more than two years to reach, get) here. Generally, the urrey went well, but the living conditions were (quiet, quiet) add during e journey. We had to produce most of the food in the spaceship. [What's ore, What's worse), our water supplies were very low. We had to limit the use of ster during (these, those) days. So we had a shower every six weeks. Well spend another seven hundred and softy-three days on Mars. (How, hat) a long time! I often miss the family, but the excitement of being on Mars is with it!	4. Is Mars a comfortable place for heavy people? Kangkang's uncle sent an e-mall to him from Mars. Choose the right words to complete the letter. The formers has good very well. The formers has good very well. (since, from) we landed on Mars. It	y people? I to him from Mars. Choose the righ
Kangkang's uncle sent an e-mall to him from Mars. Choose the right words to complete the letter. The joscep bas pass very will.	Kangkang's uncle sent an e-mall to him from Mars. Choose the right words to complete the letter. This formers has poor very will.	Kangkang's uncle sent an e-mall to him from Mars. Choose the right words to complete the letter. This formers has poor very will.	Kangkang's uncle sent an e-mall to him from Mars. Choose the righ words to complete the letter. The Joseph Sas goav very well.	Kangkang's uncle sent an e-mail to him from Mars. Choose the right words to complete the letter. This formers has poor very well.	to him from Mars. Choose the righ
ingkang. as been two days (since, from) we landed on Mars. It	Kangkang. Kangkang. (since, from) we landed on Mars. It st, took) us more than two years to (reach, get) here. Generally, the mery went well, but the living conditions were (quiet, quite) bad during to journey. We had to produce most of the food in the spaceship (What's re, What's worse), our water supplies were very low. We had to limit the use of ter during (these, those) days. So we had a shower every six weeks. will spend another seven hundred and soty-three days on Mars (How, at) a long time! I often miss the family, but the excitement of being on Mars is the it!	Kangkang. Kangkang. (since, from) we landed on Mars. It st, took) us more than two years to (reach, get) here. Generally, the mery went well, but the living conditions were (quiet, quite) bad during to journey. We had to produce most of the food in the spaceship (What's re, What's worse), our water supplies were very low. We had to limit the use of ter during (these, those) days. So we had a shower every six weeks. will spend another seven hundred and soty-three days on Mars (How, at) a long time! I often miss the family, but the excitement of being on Mars is the it!	Kangkang. Kangkang.	Kangkang. Ass been two days (since, from) we landed on Mars. It (set, took) us more than two years to (reach, get) here. Generally, the merey went well, but the living conditions were (quiet, quite) bad during e journey. We had to produce most of the food in the spaceship (What's re, What's worse), our water supplies were very low. We had to limit the use of ter during (these, those) days. So we had a shower every six weeks. will spend another seven hundred and sixty-three days on Mars (flow, lat) a long time! I often miss the family, but the excitement of being on Mars is the luck! Yours,	N 1/2 (102 + A/2)
angkang. as been two days (since, from) we landed on Mars. It it, took) us more than two years to (reach, get) here. Generally, the ney went well, but the living conditions were (quiet, quite) bad during journey. We had to produce most of the food in the spaceship (What's e, What's worse), our water supplies were very low. We had to limit the use of er during (these, those) days. So we had a shower every six weeks. will spend another seven hundred and sixty-three days on Mars (How, t) a long time! I often miss the family, but the excitement of being on Mars is thit!	Kangkang, has been two days (since, from) we landed on Mars. It st, took) us more than two years to (reach, get) here. Generally, the new went well, but the living conditions were (quiet, quite) bad during journey. We had to produce most of the food in the spaceship (What's re, What's worse), our water supplies were very low. We had to limit the use of ter during (these, those) days. So we had a shower every six weeks. Will spend another seven hundred and sokty-three days on Mars (How, at) a long time! I often miss the family, but the excitement of being on Mars is thit! sh me luck!	Kangkang, has been two days (since, from) we landed on Mars. It st, took) us more than two years to (reach, get) here. Generally, the new went well, but the living conditions were (quiet, quite) bad during journey. We had to produce most of the food in the spaceship (What's re, What's worse), our water supplies were very low. We had to limit the use of ter during (these, those) days. So we had a shower every six weeks. Will spend another seven hundred and sokty-three days on Mars (How, at) a long time! I often miss the family, but the excitement of being on Mars is thit! sh me luck!	Kangkang. has been two days (since, from) we landed on Mars. It ost, took) us more than two years to (reach, get) here. Generally, the urrey went well, but the living conditions were (quiet, quiet, quiet) and during e journey. We had to produce most of the food in the spaceship. (What's ore, What's worse), our water supplies were very low. We had to limit the use of atter during (these, those) days. So we had a shower every six weeks. well spend another seven hundred and soity-three days on Mars. (How, hat) a long timel I often miss the family, but the excitement of being on Mars is orth it! Sh me luck! Yours,	Kangkang. has been two days (since, from) we landed on Mars. It st, took) us more than two years to (reach, get) here. Generally, the nery went well, but the living conditions were (quiet, quiet) bad during e journey. We had to produce most of the food in the spaceship (What's re, What's worse), our water supplies were very low. We had to limit the use of ter during (these, those) days. So we had a shower every six weeks. Will spend another seven hundred and sixty-three days on Mars (flow, lat) a long timel I often miss the family, but the excitement of being on Mars is rth it! Sh me luck!	N COUNTY AND
as been two days	has been two days (since, from) we landed on Mars. It isst, took) us more than two years to (reach, get) here. Generally, the mey went well, but the living conditions were (quiet, quite) bad during journey. We had to produce most of the food in the spaceship (What's re, What's worse), our water supplies were very low. We had to limit the use of ter during (these, those) days. So we had a shower every six weeks. Well spend another seven hundred and sokty-three days on Mars (flow, at) a long time! I often miss the family, but the excitement of being on Mars is thit! sh me luck! Yours,	has been two days (since, from) we landed on Mars. It isst, took) us more than two years to (reach, get) here. Generally, the mey went well, but the living conditions were (quiet, quite) bad during journey. We had to produce most of the food in the spaceship (What's re, What's worse), our water supplies were very low. We had to limit the use of ter during (these, those) days. So we had a shower every six weeks. Well spend another seven hundred and sokty-three days on Mars (flow, at) a long time! I often miss the family, but the excitement of being on Mars is thit! sh me luck! Yours,	has been two days (since, from) we landed on Mars. It ost, took) us more than two years to [reach, get) here. Generally, the unrey went well, but the living conditions were [quiet, quiet, quiet) and during e journey. We had to produce most of the food in the spaceship. [What's ore, What's worse), our water supplies were very low. We had to limit the use of atter during (these, those) days. So we had a shower every six weeks. (How, hat) a long time! I often miss the family, but the excitement of being on Mars is with it!	has been two days (since, from) we landed on Mars. It tost, took) us more than two years to (reach, get) here. Generally, the living mery went well, but the living conditions were (quiet, quite) bad during ejourney. We had to produce most of the food in the spaceship (What's rec, What's worse), our water supplies were very low. We had to limit the use of ter during (these, those) days. So we had a shower every six weeks. The during (these, those) days. So we had a shower every six weeks (flow, ust) a long time! I often miss the family, but the excitement of being on Mars is rth it! sh me luck! Yours,	
it, took) us more than two years to (reach, get) here. Generally, the new well, but the living conditions were (quiet, quite) bad during journey. We had to produce most of the food in the spaceship (What's e, What's worse), our water supplies were very low. We had to limit the use of er during (these, those) days. So we had a shower every six weeks. will spend another seven hundred and sixty-three days on Mars (How, t) a long time! I often miss the family, but the excitement of being on Mars is the fit.	sst, took) us more than two years to reach, get) here. Generally, the received, but the living conditions were (quiet, quite) bad during e journey. We had to produce most of the food in the spaceship. (What's rec, What's worse), our water supplies were very low. We had to limit the use of ter during (these, those) days. So we had a shower every six weeks. will spend another seven hundred and sixty-three days on Mars. (How, at) a long timel I often miss the family, but the excitement of being on Mars is thit!	sst, took) us more than two years to reach, get) here. Generally, the received, but the living conditions were (quiet, quite) bad during e journey. We had to produce most of the food in the spaceship. (What's rec, What's worse), our water supplies were very low. We had to limit the use of ter during (these, those) days. So we had a shower every six weeks. will spend another seven hundred and sixty-three days on Mars. (How, at) a long timel I often miss the family, but the excitement of being on Mars is thit!	ost, took) us more than two years to (reach, get) here. Generally, the urrey went well, but the living conditions were (quiet, quite) bad during ie journey. We had to produce most of the food in the spaceship (What's epoch, our water supplies were very low. We had to limit the use of a ter during (these, those) days. So we had a shower every six weeks. e will spend another seven hundred and sixty-three days on Mars (How, hat) a long time! I often miss the family, but the excitement of being on Mars is orth it! sh me luck! Yours,	ost, took) us more than two years to (reach, get) here. Generally, the the living conditions were (quiet, quite) bad during is journey. We had to produce most of the food in the spaceship (What's were, What's worse), our water supplies were very low. We had to limit the use of ter during (these, those) days. So we had a shower every six weeks. will spend another seven hundred and sixty-three days on Mars (How, at) a long time! I often miss the family, but the excitement of being on Mars is rth it! sh me luck! Yours,	
ney went well, but the living conditions were (quiet, quite) bad during journey. We had to produce most of the food in the spaceship. (What's e, What's worse), our water supplies were very low. We had to limit the use of er during (these, those) days. So we had a shower every six weeks. will spend another seven hundred and sixty-three days on Mars. (How, t) a long time! I often miss the family, but the excitement of being on Mars is the fit!	mey went well, but the living conditions were(quiet, quite) bad during journey. We had to produce most of the food in the spaceship(What's re, What's worse), our water supplies were very low. We had to limit the use of the during (these, those) days. So we had a shower every six weeks. will spend another seven hundred and sixty-three days on Mars (How, at) a long time! I often miss the family, but the excitement of being on Mars is rth it! Is the luck!	mey went well, but the living conditions were(quiet, quite) bad during journey. We had to produce most of the food in the spaceship(What's re, What's worse), our water supplies were very low. We had to limit the use of the during (these, those) days. So we had a shower every six weeks. will spend another seven hundred and sixty-three days on Mars (How, at) a long time! I often miss the family, but the excitement of being on Mars is rth it! Is the luck!	urney went well, but the living conditions were	rney went well, but the living conditions were (quiet, quite) bad during pourney. We had to produce most of the food in the spaceship. (What's rere, What's worse), our water supplies were very low. We had to limit the use of ter during (these, those) days. So we had a shower every six weeks. will spend another seven hundred and sixty-three days on Mars. (How, nat) a long time! I often miss the family, but the excitement of being on Mars is rth it! sh me luck!	om) we landed on Mars. It
journey. We had to produce most of the food in the spaceship. [What's e, What's worse), our water supplies were very low. We had to limit the use of er during	i journey. We had to produce most of the food in the spaceship. [What's re, What's worse), our water supplies were very low. We had to limit the use of ter during [these, those) days. So we had a shower every six weeks. will spend another seven hundred and sixty-three days on Mars. [How, at) a long time! I often miss the family, but the excitement of being on Mars is thit! sh me luck! Yours,	i journey. We had to produce most of the food in the spaceship. [What's re, What's worse), our water supplies were very low. We had to limit the use of ter during [these, those) days. So we had a shower every six weeks. will spend another seven hundred and sixty-three days on Mars. [How, at) a long time! I often miss the family, but the excitement of being on Mars is thit! sh me luck! Yours,	ie journey. We had to produce most of the food in the spaceship. [What's ore, What's worse], our water supplies were very low. We had to limit the use of ster during (these, those) days. So we had a shower every six weeks. e will spend another seven hundred and sixty-three days on Mars (flow, hat) a long timel I often miss the family, but the excitement of being on Mars is orth it! sh me luck! Yours,	e journey. We had to produce most of the food in the spaceship. (What's re, What's worse), our water supplies were very low. We had to limit the use of ter during (these, those) days. So we had a shower every six weeks. (How, will spend another seven hundred and sixty-three days on Mars. (How, lat) a long time! I often miss the family, but the excitement of being on Mars is rth it! sh me luck! Yours,	(reach, get) here. Generally, the
e, What's worse), our water supplies were very low. We had to limit the use of er during (these, those) days. So we had a shower every six weeks. will spend another seven hundred and socty-three days on Mars (How, t) a long timel I often miss the family, but the excitement of being on Mars is thit!	re, What's worse), our water supplies were very low. We had to limit the use of ter during (these, those) days. So we had a shower every six weeks. will spend another seven hundred and socty-three days on Mars (How, at) a long time! I often miss the family, but the excitement of being on Mars is thi it! Sh me luck! Yours,	re, What's worse), our water supplies were very low. We had to limit the use of ter during (these, those) days. So we had a shower every six weeks. will spend another seven hundred and socty-three days on Mars (How, at) a long time! I often miss the family, but the excitement of being on Mars is thi it! Sh me luck! Yours,	ore, What's worse), our water supplies were very low. We had to limit the use of ster during (these, those) days. So we had a shower every six weeks. ewill spend another seven hundred and sixty-three days on Mars (How, hata) a long timel I often miss the family, but the excitement of being on Mars is orth it! sh me luck! Yours,	ve, What's worse), our water supplies were very low. We had to limit the use of ter during (these, those) days. So we had a shower every six weeks. will spend another seven hundred and sixty-three days on Mars (flow, iat) a long timel I often miss the family, but the excitement of being on Mars is rth it! sh me luck! Yours,	ere (quiet, quite) bad during
e, What's worse), our water supplies were very low. We had to limit the use of er during (these, those) days. So we had a shower every six weeks. will spend another seven hundred and socty-three days on Mars (How, t) a long timel I often miss the family, but the excitement of being on Mars is thit!	re, What's worse), our water supplies were very low. We had to limit the use of ter during (these, those) days. So we had a shower every six weeks. will spend another seven hundred and socty-three days on Mars (How, at) a long time! I often miss the family, but the excitement of being on Mars is thi it! Sh me luck! Yours,	re, What's worse), our water supplies were very low. We had to limit the use of ter during (these, those) days. So we had a shower every six weeks. will spend another seven hundred and socty-three days on Mars (How, at) a long time! I often miss the family, but the excitement of being on Mars is thi it! Sh me luck! Yours,	ore, What's worse), our water supplies were very low. We had to limit the use of ster during (these, those) days. So we had a shower every six weeks. ewill spend another seven hundred and sixty-three days on Mars (How, hata) a long timel I often miss the family, but the excitement of being on Mars is orth it! sh me luck! Yours,	ve, What's worse), our water supplies were very low. We had to limit the use of ter during (these, those) days. So we had a shower every six weeks. will spend another seven hundred and sixty-three days on Mars (flow, iat) a long timel I often miss the family, but the excitement of being on Mars is rth it! sh me luck! Yours,	ood in the spaceship. What's
er during (these, those) days. So we had a shower every six weeks. will spend another seven hundred and sixty-three days on Mars (How, t) a long timel I often miss the family, but the excitement of being on Mars is thit! n me luck!	ter during (these, those) days. So we had a shower every six weeks. will spend another seven hundred and sixty-three days on Mars. (How, at) a long timel I often miss the family, but the excitement of being on Mars is th	ter during (these, those) days. So we had a shower every six weeks. will spend another seven hundred and sixty-three days on Mars. (How, at) a long timel I often miss the family, but the excitement of being on Mars is th	ater during (these, those) days. So we had a shower every six weeks. e will spend another seven hundred and sixty-three days on Mars (How, hat) a long time! I often miss the family, but the excitement of being on Mars is orth it! sh me luck! Yours,	ter during (these, those) days. So we had a shower every six weeks. will spend another seven hundred and sixty-three days on Mars. (How, att) a long time! I often miss the family, but the excitement of being on Mars is rth it! sh me luck! Yours,	
vill spend another seven hundred and socty-three days on Mars. (How, t) a long timel I often miss the family, but the excitement of being on Mars is th it! I me luck!	will spend another seven hundred and soty-three days on Mars. (How, at) a long timel I often miss the family, but the excitement of being on Mars is rth it! sh me luck! Yours,	will spend another seven hundred and soty-three days on Mars. (How, at) a long timel I often miss the family, but the excitement of being on Mars is rth it! sh me luck! Yours,	e will spend another seven hundred and sixty-three days on Mars. (How, hat) a long time! I often miss the family, but the excitement of being on Mars is orth it! sh me luck! Yours,	will spend another seven hundred and sixty-three days on Mars. (How, at) a long time! I often miss the family, but the excitement of being on Mars is rth it! sh me luck! Yours,	
t) a long timel I often miss the family, but the excitement of being on Mars is th it! n me luck!	at) a long timel I often miss the family, but the excitement of being on Mars is thirt! sh me luck! Yours,	at) a long timel I often miss the family, but the excitement of being on Mars is thirt! sh me luck! Yours,	hat) a long timel I often miss the family, but the excitement of being on Mars is orth fit! sish me luck! Yours,	uat) a long timel I often miss the family, but the excitement of being on Mars is rth it! sh me luck! Yours,	,
th it! n me luck!	rth it! sh me luck! Yours,	rth it! sh me luck! Yours,	orth it! ish me luck! Yours,	rth it! sh me luck! Yours,	
n me luck!	sh me luck! Yours,	sh me luck! Yours,	ish me luck! Yours,	sh me luck! Yours,	out the excitement or being on mars is
	Yours,	Yours,	Yours,	Yours,	
					7700
		Uncle Stephen	Uncle Stephen	Uncle Stephen	
Uncle Stephen	Uncle Staphen				Uncle Stephen
Siles Supplied					
				• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	anhen for Kangkang and ask him fo
Write back an e-mail to Uncle Stephen for Kangkang and ask him for			· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		
			· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	more information about Mars. The list may help you.	
Write back an e-mail to Uncle Stephen for Kangkang and ask him for	more information about Mars. The list may help you.	more information about Mars. The list may help you.	more information about Mars. The list may help you.		e list may help you.
Write back an e-mail to Uncle Stephen for Kangkang and ask him for more information about Mars. The list may help you.	more information about Mars. The list may help you. • clothing • food and drinks	more information about Mars. The list may help you. • clothing • food and drinks	more information about Mars. The list may help you. • clothing • food and drinks	· clothing • food and drinks	e list may help you.
Yours					y-three days on Mars. (How
	Write back an e-mail to Uncle Stephen for Kangkang and ask him for	Write back an e-mail to Uncle Stephen for Kangkang and ask him for	Write back an e-mail to Uncle Stephen for Kangkang and ask him for		
Write back an e-mail to Uncle Stephen for Kangkang and ask him for				more information about Mars. The list may help you.	
					aphen for Kangkang and ask him fo
Uncle Stephen	Uncle Staphen				
			_		֡



TOPIC 2



Read through Sections A-C and understand the underlined parts.

Passive Voice (III)

A wonderful movie will be shown tonight.

I'm excited about the things that will be discovered in the future.

We will be able to do anything that can be done on the earth.

I think you should first master some basic computer skills-

Let's work hard. Then our dreams will be realized.

How well do you know Sections A-C? Now do the following tasks and check.

1a Read the passage and choose a proper title. 1. Is There Life Out There? 2. Our Planet

3. The Stars at Night

Scientists think that there has been life on earth for millions of years. However, we haven't found life on other planets yet. The earth is a planet and it goes around the sun. And there are seven other planets that also go around the sun. The sun and its planets are called the solar system. The solar system is a small part of the universe.



Scientists have launched many spaceships to explore other planets in the solar system. Some spaceships have gone beyond the solar system. However, no one has discovered any life in space yet.

Why has no one from other planets sent us a message? Have they tried to send information to us? With so many stars in space, are we alone, or is there life on other planets in space?

引导学生通过完成任务的方 式归纳本话题所学知识, 培 **养他们定期自主复习所学内** 容的学习习惯,形成一定的 学习策略。

通过题材丰富的泛读文章. 进一步扩大学生的阅读量。 同时拓展文化视野、进而提 高其跨文化交际能力。

.............

以合作探究活动形式、促使 学生通过体验、实践、讨 论、合作、探究等方式、综 合运用本话题的语言知识和 技能解决现实生活中的一些 实际问题, 使学生能够用英 语做事情。

UNIT 4 000000000000000

1b Match the letters in the picture with their names according to 1a.



- () 1. the solar system) 2. the carth) 3. the universe) 4. the sun
- 2 A spaceship will be sent out to find aliens in outer space. A letter will be put on the spaceship to introduce our earth. Discuss in groups and write a short introduction of the earth. Then present it to the class
- 3 If aliens are found in the near future, what changes will happen to people on the earth? Discuss in groups and make a list of all the possibilities.

Example:

More aliens will be found with the help of our new friends. Students will be sent to their planet to learn their language.

→ Project

Reporting on the Celestial Body You Like to Live on

1. Divide the class into t







2. Discuss the life there, such as clothing, food and drink, transportation ...

- 3. Choose one student in each group to introduce the information to the
- 4. Think about which planet you would like to live on and give a report to the class.



Scope and Sequence

Unit/Title	Торіс	Function
	1. Our country has developed rapidly. Page 1	Talking about duration Expressing emotions
1	2. The population in developing countries is growing faster. Page 9	Making comparison Talking about cause and effect
The Changing World	3. The world has changed for the better. Page 17	Talking about suggestions Telling others what one has read
Review of Unit 1	25	
	1. Pollution has caused too many problems. Page 27	Making comparison Talking about health condition
2 Saving the Earth	2. All these problems are very serious.	Talking about cause and effect
	3. What can we do at home to protect the environment? Page 43	Talking about ability Giving advice

Review of Units 1–2 51



Structure	Pronunciation	Vocabulary	Strategy
Present perfect (I) have/has done have/has been to have/has gone to	Intonation	Words for leisure activities Words for communication	Paying attention to the pronunciation Guessing words Organizing your thoughts
Present perfect (II) already, yet, just, ever, never	Intonation	Words related to the population Words for numbers	Developing listening skill Analyzing expressions
Present perfect (III) for, since	Stress, weak form, liaison and pause	Names of organizations Words for social services	Using imagery Paying attention to the pronunciation
Simple past and present perfect	Stress, liaison and pause	Names of different kinds of pollution Words to describe causes of pollution	Using topic sentences
Indefinite pronoun and adverb	Weak form, liaison and intonation	Words for natural resources Words to describe pollution	Listening for the main idea Taking notes
Compound sentence or, and, while, but	Stress, liaison, intonation and incomplete plosion	Words for environmental protection Words for energy	Remembering English idioms Paying attention to the pronunciation



Scope and Sequence

Unit/Title	Topic	Function
	1. English is widely spoken throughout the world. Page 55	Talking about future intention Expressing wishes
3 English Around	2. Some things usually have different meanings in different cultures. Page 63	Expressing happiness, encouragement and reassurance Making polite requests
the World	3. Could you give us some advice on how to learn English well? Page 71	Talking about the problems in communication Talking about how to learn English
Review of Unit 3	79	
	1. When was it invented? Page 81	Expressing hope and wish Talking about the events in the past
Amazing Science	2. I'm excited about the things that will be discovered in the future. Page 89	Talking about the events in the future Expressing possibility and impossibility
	3. China is the third nation that sent a person into space. Page 97	Talking about the events in the past and expressing hope Giving advice and expressing thanks

Review of Units 3–4 105

Appendices 109



Structure	Pronunciation	Vocabulary	Strategy
Passive voice (I) am/is/are+past participle	Stress and weak form	Names of countries Words for English use	Discovering a rule Finding the information you need
Expressing the future by present continuous	Liaison, pause and intonation	Names of animals and plants Words for gestures	Using gestures Paying attention to the pronunciation
How/Wh- + to do Word formation: Derivations Compounds	Stress and liaison	Words to describe the way of English learning	Finding out about English learning
Passive voice(II) was/were+past participle	Vowels Stress and intonation	Words for materials Words to express inventions	Focusing on meanings in communication Writing a definition passage
Passive voice (III) will+be+past participle	Stress and intonation	Words about Mars Words for space description	Listening for key words Predicting by questions
Attributive clauses(I) that, which, who	Pause, weak form and intonation	Words about the development of spaceship Words about the use of computers	Using what you already know to predict Using formulas



UNIT 1 The Changing World

TOPIC 1 Our country has developed rapidly.



1a Listen, look and say.

(After a long holiday, Kangkang is happy to see his friends.)

Kangkang: Hi, Jane! Did you have a good summer holiday?

Jane: Yes. What about you?

Kangkang: Not bad. Rita, you have just come

back from your hometown. How

was your trip?

Rita: Great! I went to many places near my

> home in India. Great changes have taken place there and my hometown

has become more and more beautiful. Where have you been, Jane?

Jane: I have been to Mount Huang with my parents. It's a beautiful place.

But there were so many people that I couldn't find a good place to take

photos. And where have you been, Kangkang?

Kangkang: I have been to an English summer school to improve my English. By

the way, where's Maria?

Rita: She has gone to Cuba to be a volunteer and she will be back tomorrow.

Listen! There goes the bell.

1b Listen to 1a and complete the table.

Rita		· ——	her has become more and more
Jane	has been to		it is beautiful but there were too many
Kangkang		an English school	to his English
Maria	has gone to	to be a volunteer	and she will be back

Retell the main information of 1a based on 1b.





2a Listen to the conversation and fill in the blanks. Then practice it with your partner.

Michael: Hi, Maria, long time no see. Where you?

Maria: I to Cuba to be a volunteer.

Michael: Really? It must be fun.

Maria: Yeah, I enjoyed the work. Do you know where Jane _____ for

her summer holiday?

Michael: She to Mount Huang for vacation.

Maria: Have you seen her this morning? Michael: Oh, she to the library.

Maria: I will go and find her. By the way, where is Kangkang?

Michael: He ______ to the library, too. Let's go and find them.

- 2b Work in groups and find out the differences between have/has been to and have/has gone to.
- 3 Look at the pictures and make conversations with your partner with have/has been/gone to.

Example:

A: Where have you been?

B: I have been to Mount Huang. How about Maria?

A: She has gone to Cuba. She is still there and will be back tomorrow.



Mount Huang

Cuba



Australia



Africa



the Great Wall

Hangzhou



London



America



1a Look, listen and say.

Kangkang: Hi, Maria! I haven't seen you for a long time. You took part in some volunteer activities during the summer holidays, didn't you?

Maria: Yes. I was a volunteer in a disabled children's home. Kangkang: Cool! Did you clean rooms for the disabled children?

Maria: Yes, I did.

Kangkang: Did you feed them?

Maria: No, I didn't. But I cooked for them.

Kangkang: What a wonderful experience!

Maria: Yes, it really was. I've learnt a lot from

it. I think it makes me happy to help

others.

Kangkang: How interesting! Have you been to any

other place?

Maria: No, I haven't. Though I had no time to travel, I still felt very happy.

What about you?

Kangkang: You're so kind. I have been to an English summer school. I made

some new friends there. We also put on funny shows for a group of

old people in a community.

Maria: Great! To help others makes us happy.

1b Listen to 1a and mark T (True) or F (False).

1. Maria helped the disabled children to clean the rooms and fed them.	()	
--	---	---	--

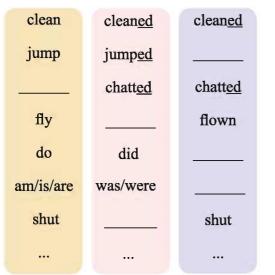
- 2. Maria thinks her experience as a volunteer was wonderful.
- 3. Maria felt very happy because she helped others. ()
- 4. Kangkang has been to a summer school to help the old. ()
- 5. Kangkang has made some new friends in the English summer school. ()

1c Read 1a and complete the following passage.

Both Maria and Kangkang have done something meaningful. Maria ha	as
some volunteer activities to help some disabled She	
a lot from it, and she said others made her happy. Kangkang	
an English summer school. He some new friends there, and they als	SO
funny shows for a group of old people in a .	



2a Fill in the blanks with the different forms of the verbs. Read them aloud and pay attention to the underlined parts. Then listen and check.



7	THE WILL
1	The pronunciation of "ed" is "/t/, /d/,
	or /Id/" when it is added to the verbs
	ending with different sounds, such
	as help/jump, play/turn or wait/end.

2b Listen and read the example sentences aloud, paying attention to the pronunciation and intonation. Then make up more based on the table.

Example:

A: Has Ann ever cleaned rooms?

A: Has Ann chatted online?

B: Yes, she has.

B: No, she hasn't.

Activity Name	clean rooms	jump rope	chat online	fly a kite	do farm work	•••
Ann	\odot	\odot	(<u>:</u> ()	\odot	(;	
Zhang Yang		<u>:</u>	\odot		(:	

Work in groups and survey your group members about their vacation experiences based on 2b. Then report it to the class.

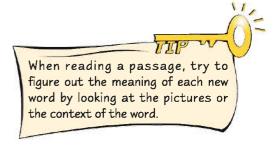
You may begin like this:

Jane has done some farm work ...



1a Read and understand.

Look at the pictures of Beijing in the past and at present. Then guess the meaning of each word and the main idea of the text.





roads - narrow



houses — small, crowded



communications — simple, slow



ring roads — wide



houses — comfortable



communications — various, quick, easy

Changes in Beijing

I'm Kangkang. For this report I have interviewed my grandmother. She has lived in Beijing for more than forty years. She has seen the changes in Beijing herself.

In the 1960s, the living conditions in the city were poor. The roads were narrow and there weren't many ring roads. Big families were crowded into small houses. Many families couldn't get enough food. Few children had the chance to receive a good education. People had little money to see a doctor. And there were few hospitals. People kept in touch with their friends and relatives far away mainly by letter or telegram.

China has developed rapidly since the reform and opening-up. More and more ring roads and subways have appeared and buildings in Beijing are becoming taller and brighter. People's living conditions have improved a lot. And there are more kinds of food and clothes to satisfy people's needs. Children can study not only in modern schools but also on the Internet. People can enjoy good medical care. What's more, communications are becoming easier and quicker — people can use telephones, cellphones, fax machines and the Internet.

Beijing has made rapid progress and it has already succeeded in hosting the 2008 Olympic Games. I think it is important to remember the past, live in the present and dream about the future.

- 1b Read 1a and match the words and phrases with their meanings.
 - 1. communication
 - 2. keep in touch
 - 3. far away
 - 4. progress
 - 5. rapid
 - 6. satisfy

- A. not near
- B. the course of improving or developing
- C. way of sending information
- D. to make sb. pleased by doing or giving them what they want
- E. write or phone or visit very often
- F. happening very quickly or in a short time
- 1c Read 1a again and complete the tasks.
 - 1. Underline the topic sentence of each paragraph.
 - 2. List four changes in Beijing.

1)	3)
2)	4)

- Work in groups and talk about the changes in your hometown.
 Then report it to the class.
 - 1. What was/were ... like in the past?
 - 2. What has happened to ... nowadays?
 - 3. What will ... be like in the future?
- help organize your thoughts.

It is important to write a topic sentence for each paragraph to

Write a short passage on the topic Changes in ... You should write its situation in the past and at present based on 2.



Read through Sections A-C and understand the underlined parts.

Grammar

Present Perfect (I)

I have been to Mount Huang with my parents.

She has gone to Cuba to be a volunteer.

China has developed rapidly since the reform and opening-up.

It has already succeeded in hosting the 2008 Olympic Games.

Great changes have taken place there ...

I haven't seen you for a long time.

Have you been to any other place? Yes, I have./No, I haven't.

Functions

1a

There goes the bell.

What a wonderful experience!

Though I had no time to travel, I still felt very happy.

To help others makes us happy.

I think it is important to remember the past, live <u>in</u> the present and dream <u>about</u> the future.

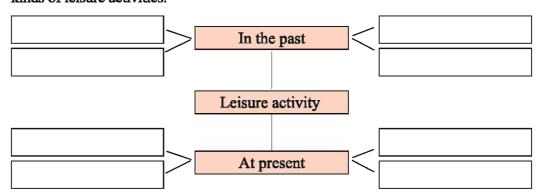
How well do you know Sections A-C? Now do the following tasks and check.

Read the following passage and complete the table on Page 8.

Changing Leisure Activities

Leisure activities are the kinds of things people like to do to relax and enjoy themselves when they are not working or going to school. Leisure activities play an important part in people's lives. In the past, there were few leisure activities. Children often got together to play hide-and-seek. People met to play cards or chess in the street. Few people had chances to travel. Watching operas and listening to the radio were the main activities in their spare time.

Since the reform and opening-up, Chinese people have had more time to spend on various kinds of leisure activities. A lot of people love both to play and to watch team sports like basketball or football. Many people stay at home having a rest, reading books and watching TV. Young people like to play games on computers or chat on the Internet. In recent years, more and more people love to travel during vacation. They go to visit some places of interest, and some people even make a tour abroad to see the world. Chinese people now have the time and chance to do more kinds of leisure activities.



- 1b Read 1a and answer the following questions.
 - 1. When do people usually have their leisure activities?
 - 2. How many kinds of leisure activities do you know? Give some examples.
 - 3. What are your favorite leisure activities?

Project

Making a Poster About Changing Leisure Activities

1. Leisure activities for children have changed a lot. Look at the table below and talk about them in groups.

In the past	Now
watch movies in the open air	watch movies at home
fly paper planes	fly model planes
roll iron rings	go roller skating

- 2. Try to find out more changes in leisure activities and their pictures. You can ask your parents or grandparents for help if necessary.
- 3. Make a poster to show the changes with the topic Different Times, Different Leisure Activities. Choose the best one in each group and display it on the wall.

TOPIC 2 The population in developing countries is growing faster.



1a Listen, look and say.

Maria: Hello, Michael. I have just called you, but you weren't in. Where have you been?

Michael: I have just been to a shopping center with Kangkang. I've never been there before, but I don't want to go there any more.

Maria: Why not?

Michael: Because there were too many people. We got lost and couldn't find each other.

Maria: Bad luck! Have you found him yet?

Michael: No, he has probably gone home. Let's call him up now. I really hate going to a place like that.

THE CONTRACT OF THE CONTRACT O

Maria: So do I.

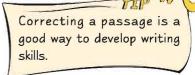
1b Listen to 1a and mark T (True) or F (False).

1. Michael has just been to a shopping center.	()
2. Michael hates to go to the place because he couldn't buy anything.	()

3. Kangkang and Michael went back home together. ()

4. Maria likes going there.

1c Read 1a and correct the five mistakes in the passage.



Michael and Kangkang have just gone to a shopping center. They	1. been
have never been there before, but they don't want to go there some more	2
because there were such many people that they couldn't find each	3
other. Michael hasn't found Kangkang already. Maybe Kangkang has	4
been home already. Both Michael and Maria hate going to a place like that.	5.

000000000000

2 A. Look at the pictures and listen to the conversation. Then tick the places Steve has visited.

	places oteve has visited.
	shopping center cinema central park department store
	B. Listen again and fill in the blanks. Then practice the conversation
	with your partner.
	(Steve and Helen are talking on the phone.)
	Steve: I have just been living here for a few days. Could
	you tell me some interesting places around here?
	Helen: Have you been to the new shopping center?
	Steve: No. I've been there before. But I've
	been to a department store.
	Helen: Then you can go there to do some shopping. By
	the way, have you been to the cinema
	nearby?
	Steve: Yes, I've watched a movie there. It is wonderful.
	Helen: Have you been to the central park?
	Steve: No, I haven't been there
	Helen: Then, you can have a walk there. Steve: Thank you.
2	·
3	Read and understand the first sentence. Then complete the second one.
	1. I always lose my way in New York.
	I always in New York.
	2. Yesterday Maria made a telephone call to Michael, but he wasn't at home.
	Yesterday Maria Michael, but he wasn't
	3. Mr. Brown is such a kind teacher that we all like him.
	This teacher is so that we all like him.
	4. I don't like to go to such a crowded place.
	I going to a crowded place this.



1a Look, listen and say.

(Kangkang is reading a report on population in the newspaper.)

Kangkang: Wow! What a large population!

Maria: What?

Kangkang: Look, it says the world has a population of 7.2 billion. And it is increasing by 90 million every year.

Maria: Mmm, that's really a lot. Which country has the largest population?

Kangkang: China has the largest population. It

has already reached 1.37 billion, and

India is second with 1.31 billion.

Maria: What's the population of the USA?

Kangkang: 321 million.

Maria: Oh, I see. It shows that the population

in developing countries is larger than that in developed countries,

doesn't it?

Kangkang: Yes. What's more, the population in developing countries is growing faster.

Maria: So it is. The population problem has become more serious in developing countries.

Kangkang: Luckily, China has already carried out some policies to solve the problem.

1b Listen to 1a and match the information.

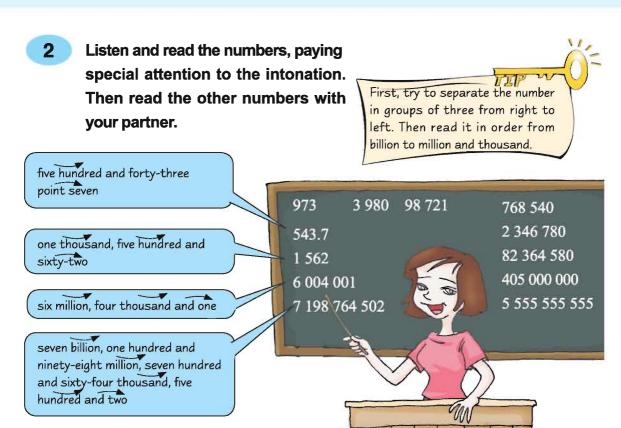
1. the world	2. China	3. India	4. the USA	
--------------	----------	----------	------------	--

A. 321 million B. 7.2 billion C. 1.37 billion D. 1.31 billion

1c Read 1a and fill in the blanks.

The	world has a population of 7.2 billion and it is increasing by	every
year	has the largest population. It has already reached	and India is
	with 1.31 billion. The population in developing countries is	and is
growing	than that in developed countries. Luckily, our countr	y has carried
out some	e policies to the problem.	

3



Work in groups and discuss the population of the world. The following chart and questions may help you.



- 1. Which of these 5 countries has the largest/smallest population? What's the population of it?
- 2. What can you tell from the population in developing countries and in developed countries?
- 3. What problems does the large population cause?
- 4. What measures do you think should be taken to solve the population problem?



1a Read and understand.

- 1.Before you read the passage, discuss the questions with your partner.
 - 1) Why did China carry out the one-child policy?
 - 2) What social problems do you think China's large population has caused?
- 2. Write the title of the passage.

In 2015, the world's population was about 7.2 billion. More than four billion people live in Asia now. That's more than half of the world's population.

China has the largest population in the world, and about one fifth of the people in the world live in China. Because of the large population, there is less living space for each family. And it is difficult for lots of people to find jobs. At the



same time, the large population has caused many other difficulties for the whole nation. For example, it is hard for China to supply water and energy to satisfy people's daily needs. Most cities are more crowded than before, and the traffic is much heavier. Natural environments are becoming worse and worse. The large population has been a serious problem.

So far, our government has taken many measures to solve the population problem. One was known as the one-child policy. It worked well in controlling China's population. Thanks to the policy, China is developing quickly and people's living conditions are improving rapidly. However, the population problem is still serious in China. We still have a long way to go.

1b Read 1a and match the main idea with each paragraph.

- Paragraph 1
 Paragraph 2
- 3. _____ Paragraph 3
- A. the measures to deal with the problems
- B. the world's and Asia's population
- C. the problems caused by large population

1c Read 1a again and complete the table.

Population of China	
Social problem	less fewer opportunities less and crowded heavy natural environments
Government measure	

Complete the following passage with the correct forms of the given words or phrases.

grow reach have find work become face carry out

Every minute, about 261 babies are born in the world. That means people have to _____ food for about 375 840 newborn babies every day. The world's population ____ very fast. It has ____ one of the biggest social problems today.



China _____ the largest population in the world. There are about 1.37 billion people in China. It has _____ 20 percent of the world's population. China has _____ some policies to solve the population problem, and these policies have ____ well. But China still ____ a serious population problem.

- Work in groups and search for the information about the following questions. Then share your idea with your group members.
 - 1. How do you think we can get more living space?
 - 2. What should the government do to offer more job opportunities?
 - 3. Water and energy are less and less. What should we do to deal with it?
 - 4. The traffic in cities is much heavier than before. How can we solve the problem?
- **3b** Write a short passage of three paragraphs based on 3a.



Read through Sections A-C and fill in the blanks with the correct words.

Grammar

Present Perfect (II I have called you	-	I've	been there before.
It has reached 1.			
Have you found him	?	Have you _	been to the cinema nearby
Functions			
I really going to	a place	like that	do I

I really	going to a place like that.	do I.
It is increasing	90 million every year.	
the population	in developing countries is	that in developed countries.
Chinatl	he largest population in the wor	ld, and about one of the
people in the wo	orld live in China.	
to the p	olicy, China is developing quic	kly and

How well do you know Sections A-C? Now do the following tasks and check.

Read the two short passages and take notes based on the table on Page 16.



1

Hello, everyone! My name is Sue. I live in Canada. Canada is a large country with a population of about 36 million. I live in a small mountain town called Fairmont. I have lived here since I was three. Fewer than 600 people live here. The small town is surrounded by trees.

The air is clean and fresh. People live close to nature and try to protect it. They are careful with garbage and discourage cutting trees. The town is really like one big family. The local people often help each other and have fun together. But sometimes it is hard to see friends because they live so far away.

Hi, I'm Li Ming. I live in Beijing, the capital of China. My city has a long history and many places of interest. We have big shopping centers and huge markets. Our public transportation is excellent, too. Buses, taxis, and subways can

take my friends and me to any part of the city. We can play sports, see Beijing operas, go to movie theaters, and eat delicious food. There are many fine places such as Beihai Park and Tian'anmen Square where we can meet



with friends to dance or listen to music. I love my city of Beijing because I have so many friends here and we have so many interesting places to visit together. But now the large population in Beijing has caused some problems.

Name	Sue	Li Ming
Place	in Fairmont, a small town	in Beijing, a large city
Advantage		
Disadvantage		

2 Write a short passage about the place you would like to live based on 1.

You may begin like this:

I'm ... I would like to live in ... First of all, ...

Project

Making a Report on Different Types of Families

- 1. Look at the different types of families below and discuss the advantages and disadvantages of each type of family.
- 2. Which kind of family do you belong to and which one do you like better? Why?



extended family 3. Report the result to the class.



nuclear family

TOPIC 3 The world has changed for the better.



1a Listen, look and say.

(Helen and Bob are talking on the phone.)

Helen: You have been in New York for a long time. How do you like living there?

Bob: It's great. I really love it.

Helen: But I heard that the local traffic was terrible and almost everyone drove too fast.

Bob: Oh, you will get used to it very soon if you come.

Helen: I also heard the streets were dirty.

Bob: They used to be, but the city has improved a lot since I came here a few years ago.

Helen: Isn't it dangerous to live there?

Bob: Well, it was in the past, but it's quite safe now. As a matter of fact, it's a



wonderful place to live. Near our block, there are beautiful parks, good schools, famous museums and excellent restaurants. And you can go to plays, concerts and operas every day if you like. You must come for a visit. Then you can see New York yourself.

1b Listen to 1a and tick what was mentioned about New York.

	terrible traffic dirty streets
In the past	unfriendly people dangerous to live
	fewer shopping centers
	beautiful parks clean and fresh air
Nowadays	☐ huge markets ☐ famous museums
	good schools excellent restaurants

1c Work in pairs and describe New York to your partner based on 1b. You may start like this:

A: How much do you know about the traffic in New York?

B: I heard that the traffic there was terrible. Do you have any ideas about the streets there?

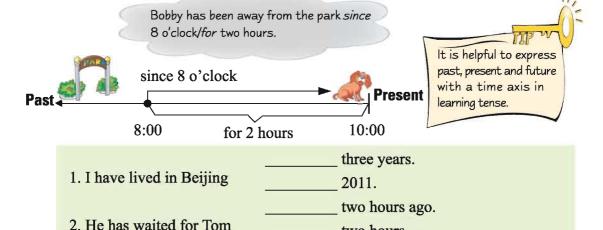
A: ...



2 Listen to the passage and fill in the blanks with the correct forms of the given words or phrases.

	theater	used to	improve	wonderful	as a matter of	fact	since	
	Broadwa	ay is a st	treet in Ne	ew York. It	has been there	·	181	1. It
	be di	rty. But i	t	since the 192	20s. The area no	ear T	imes Squa	re is
the	home of I	Broadway	theaters.	There have b	een many famo	ous _	a	long
the	street for 1	many yea	rs. A lot of	artists perfor	m plays, concer	rts an	d operas tl	here.
Eve	ery year m	illions of	visitors co	me to enjoy	the r	nusic	and danc	e on
Bro	adway	,	Broadway	stands for the	American thea	iter in	ndustry.	

Look carefully and think about the differences between *since* and *for* in 1a. Then complete the sentences with *since* or *for* and listen and check.



Work in groups and talk about the place you live. Compare today's situation with that of the past. The following dialogs may help you.

two hours.

the new term began.

A: I have been in ... for/since ...

3. We have learned chemistry

B: How do you like living there?

A: It is .../Very good./I really ...

B: Was the local traffic terrible/good/...?

A: Yes./No, it was ... /used to be ... in the past, and now it is ...

B: ...

4



1a Look, listen and say.

Maria: What are you reading, Jane?

Jane: I'm reading a newspaper from Canada. Martin showed me an interesting article. It is about a program that helps homeless people.

Maria: Are there homeless people in Canada?

Jane: Oh, yes. Many countries have homeless people.

The article says one city has a wonderful program.

Since it started, it has helped hundreds of people return to work and live a normal life.

Maria: That sounds great! How do they manage it?

Jane: Well, once they find people in need, they decide on suitable ways to offer them help.



Maria: Can the homeless people get enough food, homes and medical treatment?

Jane: Yes. And it's not only that. The program also provides them with job training so that they can find jobs again.

Maria: I think it is important for these people to feel good about themselves.

Jane: You are right. The world has changed for the better.

1b Listen to 1a and mark T (True) or F (False).

1. Maria and Jane are talking about a program in China.	()
2. The program helps the homeless people in many ways.	()
3. The program also trains those people in need to help them find jobs again.	()
4. It is important to let homeless people feel good about themselves.	()
5. The world has not changed people's lives.	()

1c Read 1a and fill in the blanks.

There is a wonderful progra	nm that helps	people in Canada.
The program not only	enough food,	and homes for the
homeless people, but also	them in order	to help them
again. Thanks to the program, the hor	meless people feel	about themselves.



2 Complete the passage with the correct forms of the given phrases in the box.

get used to feel good provide...with in need decide on medical treatment

The heaviest rainsto	orm since 195	1 hit Beijing and	d caused flood	ls in some
areas on July 21, 2012. N	Iany people go	ot in trouble and so	ome even lost th	neir homes.
Our government	them	tents and _	imme	diately.
Some volunteers drove to	o pick up the j	people	They	many
different ways to help t	he homeless.	The whole city	was in a help	ful mood.
"I because I	could help so	many people o	ut and I hope	they will
the new life,"	said the farm	worker, Li Chuan	nan.	

Review the differences between since and for. Read Xiao Lin's experiences and fill in the blanks with since or for.

Xiao Lin is not only the secretary of the Helpers' Club but also an excellent computer engineer. He's the son of a fisherman ...

1992	his father died	-	His father has been dead many years.
2002	left the army because	→	He has been away from the army twelve
	of a leg wound		years because of a leg wound.
2003	came to Beijing	→	He has been in Beijing 2003.
2004	joined the Helpers' Club	-	He has been a member of Helpers' Club 2004.
2005	bought a house	→	He has had a house 2005.
2012	borrowed a car	-	He has kept the car two years.
		-	

- Retell Xiao Lin's experiences to your partner based on the box in 3a.

 Work in pairs and make a similar box about your partner.
- 4 Listen and read the following sentences with since and for, paying attention to the stress, weak form, liaison and pause.
 - 1. 'I have 'lived in 'New 'York for 'three years.
 - 2. 'He has been 'away from 'home for 'twelve days.
 - 3. Since it 'started,/it has 'helped 'hundreds of 'people 'return to work/and 'live a 'normal life.





1a Read and understand.

Are there any homeless people in your hometown? Try to list the reasons you know for the homelessness.

One of the most basic human needs is a home. A home is a safe place. While most people around the world value their homes, there are many people in every country who are homeless.

Some people are homeless for a short period of time because they are moving from one place to another, and other people are not able to find a home. They must live on the streets or in a shelter.

There are many causes of homelessness. Sometimes people can not keep a home because they do not earn enough money, or because they do not have a job. Sometimes people are homeless because they have a problem with drugs or because they have a mental illness. No one is ever homeless **on purpose**.

Whatever the cause of homelessness is, the effects are the same. Homeless people must work very hard to live. They can not raise their children. Sometimes they must steal food just to eat. The government in every country has worked for many years to **support** the homeless but more needs to be done. We must think of the homeless as people, not just as problems.

1b Read 1a and choose the best title.

- A. A Serious Problem Homelessness
- B. The Causes and Effects of Homelessness
- C. A Home is a Safe Place

1c Read 1a again and complete the table.

Cause of short-time homelessness	Cause of homelessness	Effect of homelessness
1)	1) 2) 3) 4)	1) 2) 3)

2



- 1d Read 1a again and answer the questions.
 - 1. What does the phrase "on purpose" mean according to the context?
 - 2. What does the word "support" mean according to the context?
 - 3. Have governments done enough to help the homeless people? What else can we do to help them?
 - Work in groups. Look at the pictures and discuss the causes and effects of homelessness, child labor, or war. The following may help you.







homeless people

child laborers

cruel wars

- A: What are the causes of ...?
- B: There are many causes of ... Some causes are ...
- A: What are the effects of ...?
- B: Whatever the cause is, the effects are the same .../The effects are different. Some are ...
- A: What have governments/people done to help?
- B: They have ...
- A: Have they done enough?
- B: ...
- A: What can we do now?
- B: ...
- Write a Cause and Effect passage based on 2. The sentences below may help you.
 - The world has many problems such as
 - Some causes of _____ are ____
 - _____ happens because _____.
 - Some effects of _____ are ____ and ____.
 - The governments have ______.
 - People have ______. There is hope that there will be less in the future.



1a

Read through Sections A-C and fill in the blanks with the correct words.

Grammar

You (have gone/have been) in New York for a long time. The city (has improved/improved) a lot (since/for) (come/came) here a few years ago. (Since/For) it (have started/started), it (helped/has helped) hundreds of people return to work and live a normal life.	Presen	t Perfect (III)		
(come/came) here a few years ago(Since/For) it(have started/started), it	You	(have gone/have	been) in New York for a long	g time.
	The city _		• /	(since/for) I
(helped/has helped) hundreds of people feturn to work and five a normal file.				
Functions	Function	ons		

Oh, you will get ______ to it very soon if you come.

____ a matter of fact, it's a wonderful place to live.

You must come for a _____.

Well, once they find people in need, they decide _____ suitable ways to offer them help.

The program also provides them _____ job training so that they can find jobs again.

How well do you know Sections A-C? Now do the following tasks and check.

Read the passage and underline the topic sentence for each paragraph.

Project Hope

Project Hope is an education program to help students. It builds schools in the poorest parts of China and it helps poor families afford an education for their children.

Since Project Hope started in 1989, it has done very well. By 2012, Project Hope had raised 8.73 billion *yuan*. With this money, it has aided 4.5 million children to go to schools and it has built 18 002 Hope Primary Schools.



Project Hope has made important contributions to both the education and the health of children. For more than 20 years, Project Hope has encouraged the moral development and modern thinking of students. As a result, the students in Hope

000000000000

schools respect their teachers, aid the poor, and help one another. Project Hope is the best-known and most successful education program in China. Without Project Hope, there is a risk that many children would have an unhappy future.

- 1b Read 1a again and answer the questions.
 - 1. What is Project Hope?
 - 2. What has Project Hope done?
 - 3. What's the importance of Project Hope?
 - 4. What can you do for Project Hope?
- 2 Complete the passage with the correct forms of the given words.

be start change work pay leave

Minmin comes from a poor family. She has received help from Project Hope. Without the help of Project Hope, she couldn't continue her studies. Project Hope her life. She _____ a college student for two years. After ____ the college, she will _____ for Project Hope. Project Hope _____ for the education of millions of poor students like Minmin since it _____. Are there any children like her around you? What difficulties do they have? Project Hope can help them.

Project

Making a Speech About an Organization

1. Work in groups and collect information about one of the organizations: what it is, what it has done, what the effects of it are and so on.









World Health Organization

and Teenagers' Fund

International Committee of the Red Cross

Chinese Young
Volunteers Association

2. Make a short speech about the organization you have discussed.



MEALEM OF OTHER
1 Listen and read the sentences, paying special attention to the weak form
and intonation.
1. Every minute, about 261 babies are born in the world.
2. China has developed rapidly since the reform and opening-up.
3. So far, China has carried out many policies to solve the population problem.
4. A: Where have you been?
B: I have been to an English summer school for a week.
5. A: Isn't it dangerous to live there?
B: Well, it was in the past, but it's quite safe now.
2 Fill in the blanks with the correct forms of the given phrases.
thanks to be short of provide with in need on purpose carry out
1) A friend is a friend indeed.
2) We should do our best to the work.
3) I came up here to tell you what happened to her.
4) I money so I'll pay you back next week.
5) After the earthquake, the government tried to people food and
fresh water.
6) this method, his English has improved a lot.
3 Choose the correct words to complete the sentences.
1) have been have gone
A. I to Italy three times.
B. Lily is not here now. She to the railway station to meet her mother.
2) <mark>ever never already yet</mark>
A. I have been to the new museum in my city, so I know nothing about it at all.
B. — Have you watched the film, Avatar?
— Not I'll watch it this weekend.
C. The government has made some plans to control the population.
3) since for

A. Our country has developed rapidly _____ the reform and opening-up.

B. John's father has been in the small town _____ quite a long time.

4 Read the passage and complete the table.

Chinese Teenagers' Leisure Life

In the past, teenagers hardly had any chance to go out and have fun. They had no computers, even without TV at home. Nowadays, Chinese teenagers have more fun than those in the past.

First, they have plenty of chances to go outside and join in all kinds of outdoor activities. They can enjoy the fun of teenager life as well as the sunshine. During their holidays, they may get close to nature to enjoy its beauty. They can go to the seaside to swim in the sea, sunbathe and play beach volleyball. They can go climbing to share fresh air with the singing birds. Sometimes, they might go out for a picnic to have fun together. They can also get close to culture by going to cultural parks and visiting museums. In their spare time, teenagers often play team sports together, like football and basketball.

Teenagers nowadays also enjoy more indoor activities. They can have a party with their friends at weekends. If they don't want to go out, they may surf the Internet to play games or chat with others. They may watch their favorite TV programs or movies without leaving their homes.

How happy the Chinese teenagers are!

Chinese teenagers' leisure life				
outdoor activity	get close to nature: 1			
indoor activity	have a or or or			

5 Write a short passage for your school newspaper. Tell everybody about the changes in Chinese teenagers' leisure life.

UNIT 2

Saving the Earth

TOPIC 1 Pollution has caused too many problems.



1a Listen, look and say.

(Kangkang, Jane, Maria and Michael are planning a picnic for Sunday.)

Jane and Maria: Kangkang, where shall we go?

Kangkang: What about the West Hill? I went there two years ago. It was a

beautiful place. There were lots of flowers and grass. The air was

fresh and the water was clean, and you could see bees and butterflies

dancing.

Michael: Sounds great! Let's go there. (On Sunday, they come to the West Hill.)

Kangkang: Oh, what a mess! The flowers and grass have gone! The water is

so dirty. It smells terrible. What has happened here?

Maria: What a shame! Look, there are several chemical factories pouring

waste water into the stream.

Kangkang: Everything has changed.

Michael: Do you still want to have a picnic

here?

Jane: Of course not.

1b	Listen to 1a and mark the words with P (Past) or N (Now).						
	beautiful	butterflies	dirty	grass	terrible		
	factory	hees	fresh	clean	waste water		

1c Read 1a and complete the sentences in the table. Then retell 1a to your partner.

Two years ago	Now			
1. It was a	1 have gone.			
2. There were	2. The water is and smells			
3. The air was	3. There are several			
and you could see	pouringinto the stream.			
	4 has changed.			



Work in pairs. Look at the pictures and make up conversations similar to the example with your partner.



village/flowers and grass villagers/destroy

Example:

- A: There were lots of *flowers and grass* when I visited the *village* last year.
- B: But now the flowers and grass have gone.
- A: What has happened here?
- B: The *villagers* have *destroyed* them.



hill/trees farmers/cut down



lake/fish factory/pollute

3 A. Listen to the sentences and number the pictures.



B. Listen again and complete the sentences.

1. People	too many trees, so I don't have enough leaves
to eat.	
2. I live in trees but now n	nany trees
3. I like leaves and grass, l	but now they
4. I hun	gry for months because of less bamboo.
5. Human polluted the sea	, so I
6. The water	many years ago. But it
for me to live in now.	

Work in groups and talk about pollution in a place you are familiar with. The following sentences may help you.

... ago, it was ... Now, ... have/has gone. What has happened? Everything has changed. Oh, my goodness!



1a Look, listen and say.

(Mrs. Zhou is coughing. She looks weak.)

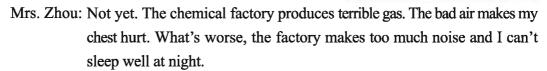
000000000000

Kangkang: Good morning, Mrs. Zhou. What's wrong with you?

Mrs. Zhou: Oh, Kangkang. It's difficult for me to breathe. I've got a pain in my throat.

Kangkang: How long have you been like this? Mrs. Zhou: I've been like this since last week.

Kangkang: Have you seen a doctor?



Kangkang: That's too bad.

Mrs. Zhou: Yes, it is really awful. I'm always in a bad mood because I can't bear the environment here. Anyway, I hope the government will solve this problem soon. By the way, have you noticed the dead fish in the river?

Kangkang: Oh, yes. Pollution has caused too many problems. I think I should write to the newspaper about these problems. But now you'd better go to see a doctor.

1b A. Listen to 1a and check the questions you hear.

Question	Answer
1 What's wrong with you?	
2 How long have you been like this?	
3 Where have you been?	
4 Have you seen a doctor?	
5 Have you noticed the dead fish in the river?	

B. Listen again and match each question above with an answer below.

a. Not yet.

c. It's difficult for me to breathe.

b. I've been like this since last week.

d. Oh, yes.

1c Read 1a and answer the questions.

- 1. What caused Mrs. Zhou's problems?
- 2. What will Kangkang do?
- 3. Do you have any other ways to solve Mrs. Zhou's problems?

2	Choose the correct words to complete the passage

Dear editor,

I'm writing to say something about the chemical factory near my house.

The factory causes _____ (too many / too much) problems. First, it produces terrible gas, and it is hard for us to _____ (breathe / breath). What's worse, the factory makes a lot of noise. We can't sleep well at night. It also pollutes the river nearby. Now there are many _____ (die / dead) fish in the river. I think people should care for these problems and I hope the government will solve them soon.

Yours,

Kangkang

Look at the pictures and read the words and phrases, paying attention

3a Look at the pictures and read the words and phrases, paying attention to the sounds and stress.



'soil po'llution



'water po'llution



'noise po'llution



'air po'llution



'litter



'light po'llution

3b Complete the sentences with the words and phrases in 3a. Then read them aloud, paying special attention to the pronunciation, liaison and pause.

Example:

People use chemicals too much in their fields, and soil pollution causes unhealthy food.

1. People near wester water into rivers and lakes (so. is almost

1. People pour waste water into rivers and lakes,/so ______ is almost everywhere in China.

2. _____ makes people sick./It causes breathing problems and even cancer.

3. In some cities,/there's too much _____ caused by many cars.

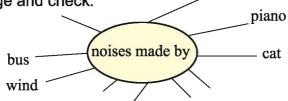
4. ______ is harmful to birds./Also,/when we use too many lights at night, we waste energy.

5. _____makes a mess of our environment,/so people shouldn't throw it around.



1a Read and understand.

Before you read, write down the things that can make noises. Then read the passage and check.



In today's world, almost everyone knows air pollution is harmful to

people's health. However, not all people know noise is also a kind of pollution and is harmful to humans' health.

People who work and live in noisy conditions often go deaf. For example, many of the workers who print newspapers and books lose their hearing. Quite a few



people living near airports also have hearing loss. Recently, it was reported that many teenagers in America can hear no better than 65-year-old people do, because these young people always listen to loud pop music.

Making a loud noise in public is also a kind of pollution. It not only disturbs others but also does great harm to people's hearing. Cars and machines also produce



too much noise. Such pollution makes people feel uncomfortable and unpleasant, and it can even cause them to become sick or deaf. Nowadays, many countries are trying to solve all sorts of environmental problems, including noise pollution.

1b Read 1a and match the words with their meanings.

- 1. produce A. to hurt someone
- 2. deaf B. a type or a kind
- 3. print C. not be able to hear
- 4. harm D. to grow or make something
- 5. sort E. to put words or pictures onto paper using a machine



1c Read 1a again and complete the following tasks. 1. Underline the topic sentence of the passage in 1a. 2. How does noise harm people's health? a. People often . Try to find out the topic b. People often feel _____ and _____. sentence to understand the content of a paragraph. c. People may become _____ or ____. d. Your point: 3. Which phrase has the same meaning as "is harmful to"? 4. Which sentence shows that many teenagers' hearing in America is not good? 5. Why is the hearing of many young Americans not good? 6. Has noise pollution caused you any problems? If yes, share your feelings with your classmates. 2 Complete the following passage with the correct form of each word. Noise is a kind of (pollute). Cars and machines produce too much noise. It makes people feel _____ (comfortable) and _____ (pleasant). It also does great (harm) to people's (hear). Noise is very (harm) to humans' (healthy). 3 Choose one kind of pollution and discuss it in groups. The following questions may help you. 1. What is ... pollution? 2. What makes the ... pollution? 3. What problems does it cause? 4. In what way is it harmful to people's life? 5. What has been done to solve these problems? Write a short report about a kind of pollution based on 2 and 3. The 4 topic sentence of each paragraph is given below. ... pollution is pollution is harmful to people's health ...

The government has tried many ways to solve the problem ...



Read through Sections A-C and fill in the blanks with the correct words.

Grammar

Noise is

... does great

Simple Past & Present Perfect

[1 (go) there two years ago.	1 Have (be) like uns since last week
There (be) lots of flowers and grass	The flowers and grass (go)!
What (happen) here?	
Functions	
Oh, what a!	
There are several chemical factories	waste water into the stream.
What's, the factory makes too mu	ch noise

How well do you know Sections A-C? Now do the following tasks and check.

deaf.

than 65-year-old people do, ...

1a Read the passage and complete the table on Page 34.

to people's hearing.

to humans' health.

People who work and live in noisy conditions often

... many teenagers in America can hear no

There are many kinds of pollution around us, including air pollution, soil pollution, noise pollution and light pollution. They are bad for our health in many ways.

Burning gas, oil and coal creates air pollution. It can cause sore eyes and breathing problems.

With the increase in population and the development of industry, litter is everywhere. It makes our environment dirty. People put lots of litter into the land. In the fields, farmers use too many chemicals which destroy the soil. Soil pollution causes unhealthy food.

Noise pollution can make people deaf. For example, people may lose their hearing if they work in a noisy place for a long time. Too much noise can cause high blood pressure as well.

Working in strong light for a long time may cause some kinds of illnesses. It makes people feel terrible and is especially bad for eyes.

With less pollution, our planet will become greener and our health will be better. Let's be greener people.

Pollution	Cause	Effect
air pollution	burning, and	eyes and problems
soil pollution	everywhere, use too many	environment andfood
noise pollution	place for a long time	make people and cause pressure
light pollution	light	kinds of, bad for

- 1b Read and understand the first sentence. Then complete the second one.
 - 1. They are bad for our health in many ways.

They _____ to our health in different ways.

- 2. People may lose their hearing if they work in a noisy place for a long time. If people work in noisy conditions for a long time they may have ...
- 3. Noise pollution can make people deaf.

People may	deaf	noise pollution.
1 copic may	acai	noise ponduon.

Project

Making a Wall Newspaper About Pollution

- 1. Collect some pictures about pollution.
- 2. What kind of pollution does each picture show? Work in groups and discuss its bad effects.
- 3. Make a wall newspaper about different kinds of pollution and the harm caused by them.







TOPIC 2 All these problems are very serious.

0000000000000



1a Listen, look and say.

(Kangkang, Maria and Jane are talking in a room. The wind outside is blowing strongly.)

Kangkang: What bad weather! The wind is so strong! And the sand really hurt my face. While I was walking down the street just now, I couldn't see

anything.

Maria: I'm sorry to hear that. What causes these sandstorms?

Jane: People have cut down too many trees. As a result, a lot of rich land has

changed into desert.

Maria: That's bad. How can that affect the

weather?

Jane: Trees can stop the wind from blowing

the earth away.

Kangkang: And a lot of water can be saved by forests.

Jane: They can also stop the water from washing the earth away.

Kangkang: Cutting down trees is harmful to human beings, animals and plants.

Although we have built "The Green Great Wall", we still need to do

something to protect the environment.

1b Listen to 1a and choose the best answer.

The boy and girls are talking about ____

A. different types of sandstorms

B. the reasons for sandstorms

C. sandstorms in different cities

1c Read 1a and complete trees' functions.



Focus on the main idea of the conversation when you listen

for the first time.



000000000000000

2	Complete the	sentences	with	the	correct	forms	of t	the	given	phras	es
	in the box.										

as a result	change into	do something	stop from	blow away
1. People have	cut down such a l	arge number of tree	s that the land	desert.
2. There are fe	wer trees left, so	the wind always _	the ear	th
3. Air pollution	n has become a se	erious problem, so	we must	to reduce it.
4. We should t	ry our best to	people	cutting o	down the trees.
5. In the future	e, human beings	can protect the tre	es well.	, animals will
live a happy	life in the forest			

3 Do you know how sandstorms come into being? Number the pictures and talk about the sandstorm in groups.



wash the earth away



many trees



change into desert



forests gone

4



sandstorms come into being



cut down trees

A. Listen to the passage and circle the phrases you hear.

become weaker on the earth

destroy the environment enough bamboo to eat

disappear rapidly

B. Listen again and fill in the blanks.

- 1. Now some kinds of animals are becoming _______.
- 2. Some animals are _____ dying out completely.
- 3. In the past, pandas lived a quiet life and had _____ food.
- 4. Humans have _____ the importance of protecting animals.
- 5. We should _____ to protect them.



1a Look, listen and say.

Michael: Kangkang, read this article.

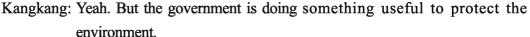
Kangkang: What's it about?

Michael: It's about air pollution in

China. It says that China has become the world's largest producer and user of coal.

As a result, air pollution has

become a serious problem.

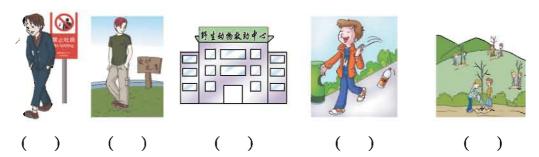


Michael: That's great. None of us likes pollution.

Kangkang: Yes. We shouldn't leave rubbish here and there. Don't spit anywhere in public. Don't walk on grass or pick flowers. Everyone should care for wild animals and plant more trees.

Michael: That's right. We should do everything we can to protect the environment.

1b Listen to 1a and number the following pictures.



1c Read 1a and complete the table.

Should do	Shouldn't do		
1 wild animals	1rubbish here and there		
2. plant	2 anywhere in public		
3. do we can	3 on grass		
	4. pick		

Dear Headmaster,



2 Listen to the letter and help Kangkang to complete it. Then read it aloud as accurately as possible.

ı	I'm writing to tell you important. Nobody likes to be untidy.
ı	However, some students throw waste paper and bottles We all need a
ı	quiet place to study, but some students often make too much noise at school.
ı	Worst of all, some of them are quite rude when talking to
ı	knows their behavior is bad, but of us knows how to stop them.
ı	I think we should make rules to change the situation who breaks
ı	the rules will be punished. Perhaps it will be hard for us to obey the rules in the
ı	beginning, but if does his or her best to follow the rules, our school
L	environment will improve.
٦	Sincerely,
d	
٦	Kangkang
3	Read and understand the first sentence. Then complete the second one and
J	read them aloud, paying attention to the weak form, liaison and intonation.
J	·
J	read them aloud, paying attention to the weak form, liaison and intonation.
J	read them aloud, paying attention to the weak form, liaison and intonation. Example: As we all know, air pollution has become a serious problem.
	read them aloud, paying attention to the weak form, liaison and intonation. Example:
	read them aloud, paying attention to the weak form, liaison and intonation. Example: As we all know, air pollution has become a serious problem. Everybody knows air pollution has become a serious problem. 1. None of us would like to see dirty water and rubbish lying around.
	read them aloud, paying attention to the weak form, liaison and intonation. Example: As we all know, air pollution has become a serious problem. Everybody knows air pollution has become a serious problem. 1. None of us would like to see dirty water and rubbish lying around. would like to see dirty water and rubbish lying around.
	read them aloud, paying attention to the weak form, liaison and intonation. Example: As we all know, air pollution has become a serious problem. Everybody knows air pollution has become a serious problem. 1. None of us would like to see dirty water and rubbish lying around. would like to see dirty water and rubbish lying around. 2. We should follow social rules and spit nowhere in public.
	read them aloud, paying attention to the weak form, liaison and intonation. Example: As we all know, air pollution has become a serious problem. Everybody knows air pollution has become a serious problem. 1. None of us would like to see dirty water and rubbish lying around. would like to see dirty water and rubbish lying around.
	read them aloud, paying attention to the weak form, liaison and intonation. Example: As we all know, air pollution has become a serious problem. Everybody knows air pollution has become a serious problem. 1. None of us would like to see dirty water and rubbish lying around. would like to see dirty water and rubbish lying around. 2. We should follow social rules and spit nowhere in public. We should follow social rules and not spit in public. 3. We should do everything to protect the environment in our daily lives.
4	read them aloud, paying attention to the weak form, liaison and intonation. Example: As we all know, air pollution has become a serious problem. Everybody knows air pollution has become a serious problem. 1. None of us would like to see dirty water and rubbish lying around. would like to see dirty water and rubbish lying around. 2. We should follow social rules and spit nowhere in public. We should follow social rules and not spit in public.
4	read them aloud, paying attention to the weak form, liaison and intonation. Example: As we all know, air pollution has become a serious problem. Everybody knows air pollution has become a serious problem. 1. None of us would like to see dirty water and rubbish lying around. ———————————————————————————————————
4	read them aloud, paying attention to the weak form, liaison and intonation. Example: As we all know, air pollution has become a serious problem. Everybody knows air pollution has become a serious problem. 1. None of us would like to see dirty water and rubbish lying around. would like to see dirty water and rubbish lying around. 2. We should follow social rules and spit nowhere in public. We should follow social rules and not spit in public. 3. We should do everything to protect the environment in our daily lives. We shouldn't do to destroy the environment in our daily lives. Discuss the following questions in groups and try to find the solutions.



1a Read and understand.

Look at the following pictures and predict the main idea of the passage.



earth to change.









The earth is 4.6 billion years old. We humans have lived on the earth for only 35 000 years, but during this period, we have changed **our planet** a lot in many ways. Some things we have done are very good for the earth while others are bad.

All over the world, people have cut down millions of trees. When it rains
or when the wind blows, the earth is taken away. Forests have become deserts, so
many kinds of animals and plants are disappearing.
In big cities, cars and buses have polluted the air. Now many people in
cities have health problems.
Factories have also polluted the land and the water. As a result, many
rivers and lakes are now dead.
Around the earth, there's a special kind of oxygen called "ozone" (O ₃). It
is important to the earth. But now air pollution is destroying it and making a very
big hole in the ozone layer. Too much harmful radiation from the sun passes through
the hole and reaches the earth directly. This is very dangerous because this kind of
radiation can cause cancer.
Carbon dioxide (CO ₂) in the air has increased a lot. It mainly comes
from burning oil, coal and wood. This has formed a blanket around the earth. The
heat from the sun can't escape so the temperature is rising. This is called "the

All these problems are very serious, so we must do something now.

greenhouse effect". It causes the level of the oceans to rise and the climate of the

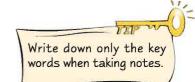


1b Read 1a and complete the following tasks.

- 1. Choose suitable titles for Paragraphs 2-6. Then write it down in front of each paragraph.
 - A. Traffic pollution B. Factory pollution C. Fewer trees
 - D. The ozone hole E. More carbon dioxide
- 2. What does our planet mean here?
 - A. The sun. B. Mars. C. The moon. D. The earth.
- 3. In the passage, blanket refers to ______
 - A. carbon dioxide around the earth
 - B. the ozone layer in the sky
 - C. the forests around the world
 - D. pollution all over the world
- 4. The word it in Paragraph 5 refers to _____.
 - A. CO₂
- B. O₃

- $C. O_2$
- D. H₂O

- 5. What is the best title for this passage?
 - A. Environmental Problems
 - B. Pollution on the Earth
 - C. Hope for the Future
 - D. The Greenhouse Effect



1c Complete the notes according to 1a.

Problem	Effect on the environment					
fewer trees	forests become deserts, animals and plants disappear					
traffic pollution						
	greenhouse effect, level of oceans rising, climate change					

- 2 Surf the Internet to collect more information about environmental problems and effects. Then discuss the information in groups and take notes.
- 3 Combine the key points in 1c and 2 to form a short passage and pay attention to the proper linking words.



1a

Read through Sections A-C and fill in the blanks with the correct words.

Grammar

Indefinite Pronoun and Adverb

of us 1	kes pollution.	
Don't spit	in public.	
		nd plant more trees.
We should do		et the environment.
Functions		
a result	, a lot of rich land has c	hanged desert.
Trees can stop the	wind from blowing the	earth
We shouldn't leav	e rubbish	
All these problem		we must do something now.
-	•	wing paragraphs in the correct ordenswer. There is plenty of water in the sea.
	<u>-</u>	the sea water. This is very expensive. If we can solve the problem of the shortage
() How can and not waste it. them. Third, we progress in this fi	Second, we should proshould discover ways to eld. Today, some large of	er shortage? First, we should save water of tect our water resources and not pollute of reuse water. Scientists have made some cities are reusing their water. But people's We still don't have enough water. What
() Although earth is covered about 97% of the	with water, we are still water on the earth is s	is even thirstier. While nearly 3/4 of the short of drinking water. This is because ea water. So we can't use it for watering an only drink and use fresh water from

places including rivers, lakes and underground.



- 1b Read 1a again and answer the questions.
 - 1. Why is our world thirsty when 3/4 of the earth is covered with water?
 - 2. What can we do now to avoid the water shortage?
 - 3. What will be the best way to solve the problem in the future in the passage?
 - 4. Do you know any other ways to solve the problem? What are they?
- 2 Discuss in groups different ways of protecting and saving water. Write down the key information.

Example:

- 1. Pass laws against water pollution.
- 2. Collect and reuse waste water.
- Write a proposal about saving water to all the students in your school.

My dear friends, Water is very	important to human l	beings. Let's do something to protect
and save it.		
First,	. Second,	Third,
Let's try our l	est to save water and	our planet.

Project

Making Posters About Natural Resources

- 1. Divide the class into several groups: Water Group, Tree Group, Soil Group ...
- 2. Each group should discuss their own uses, the problems that they face and their wishes. Then give a report in class.

Example:

Uses: I am soil. Plants can't grow without me. People use me to make many things ...

Problems: Sometimes people use too many chemicals in the fields. What's worse, they put waste into the land ... So I'm hurt. Please help me.

Wishes: I hope human beings can protect and take care of me. And then I could do more useful things for them ...

3. Make some posters with the results.

TOPIC 3 What can we do at home to protect the environment?

0000000000000



1a Listen, look and say.

(A journalist is interviewing Jane about environmental protection.)

Journalist: Hi, Jane. Could I ask you a few questions?

Jane: Certainly.

Journalist: We all know that you're working for an

organization that protects the environment.

Can you tell us what you are doing there?

Jane: Well, my main job is to help spread the

message about protecting the environment.

For example, the three R's — reduce, reuse and recycle — are important.

Journalist: So what can we do at home to protect the environment?

Jane: We should reduce the waste we produce. For example, we should use

both sides of paper and reuse plastic bags.

Journalist: What can students do at school?

Jane: Recycling can protect the environment, and it can save money, too. So

we encourage students to collect waste paper and soft drink cans. Then

we sort them so that they can be recycled.

Journalist: Wonderful ideas! Thank you!

Jane: It's a pleasure.

1b Listen to 1a and complete the table.

An interview with Jane				
where Jane works	in an to			
what Jane is doing	ng helpingabout protecting the environment			
what we can do at home	we produce			
what students can do at school	collect and soft drink cans			

1. The three R's —	. and	— are important
	,	The state of the s

- 2. At home, we can, for example, use both of paper and reuse bags.
- 3. At school, students are encouraged to _____ waste paper and _____ because recycling can protect the ____ and ____ money.
- 4. Then we them they can be recycled.



- 2 Combine the sentences with or, and, but or while, making some changes if necessary.
 - 1. Noise is a kind of pollution. It's harmful to our hearing.
 - 2. Work hard. You will fail the exam.
 - 3. Nodding the head means agreement. Shaking the head means disagreement.
 - 4. Hurry up. You will miss the bus.
 - 5. He has failed several times. He never gives up.
- Read the table and write the correct letter under each picture. Then sort the garbage based on your own knowledge.











Type of garbage	Recycled	Reused	Reduced
a. plastic bags		1	
b. paper cups			
c. cans			
d. newspapers			
e. glass bottles			

- 3b Listen to the conversation and check your answers in 3a.
- 4 Suppose you will have a Clean-up Day. Work in groups and find out the garbage. Then sort them based on 3a and talk about them.

A: I think lunch boxes should be reused.

B: What about waste paper?

A: I think...



Wow! We've got so much garbage! Soft drink cans, lunch boxes, plastic bottles, batteries, waste paper, paper bags and cups, ...



Remember some English idioms and try to use

them often.



1a Look, listen and say.

Jane: Hi, Michael. Would you like to be a greener person?

Michael: Of course, I'd love to. But what should I do?

00000000000

Jane: First, you ought to shut off the electricity when

you leave a room.

Michael: Oh, that's easy. What's next?

Jane: Second, you'd better walk or ride a bike instead of taking a bus or a taxi if you travel a short

distance.

Michael: That's right. It will save energy and reduce air pollution.

Jane: Third, take a cloth bag when you go shopping. Don't use plastic bags.

Michael: It's so easy to be a greener person.

Jane: Easier said than done.

Michael: Well, actions speak louder than words.

1b Listen to 1a and choose the correct answers.

- 1. Jane and Michael are mainly talking about ______.
 - A. why we should shut off the electricity when we leave
 - B. what we should use when we go shopping
 - C. how to be a greener person
- 2. "Actions speak louder than words" means_____
 - A. words are not as loud as actions
 - B. to do well is better than to say well
 - C. actions can speak, but words can't do it

1c Read 1a and complete the table.

	To be a greener person				
I	1when you leave the room.				
	2. If you travel a short, you shouldn't, but So				
l	this helps to and				
	3. When you go shopping, you'd better instead of using				

2 Choose the correct verbs or phrases to complete the statements. Then match them with the right pictures.

aten mieni	MICH CHE H	grit pictu	163.		
	reduce cover		recycle	A.	
which 2. Save when 3. 4. 5. Try to 6.	can be used	only once the using it. plastic be regetables the when you of the paper	ottles. yourself. ou travel. er.	C. E. G.	D. CO

3 Read the passage and fill in the blanks with the correct words. Then listen and check. The first letter of each word is given.

The earth is our home. Some things we have done are good for the earth
w some are bad. We have polluted the earth, a it is sick now. We
down too many trees, so lots of rich land has c into desert. Factories
waste water into rivers. Pollution has caused many s problems. The
earth is crying for help.
What shall we do to save it? We should plant more trees, r the waste
we produce, r the waste paper and soft drink cans, and ride bikes to reduce
air pollution. I think we should try to be g people to protect our earth.
After all, we have only one earth. We should do e to protect it, or we'll be
punished and lose our home.
Work in groups and survey your group members about what they do
to be greener people. Then report it to your class. Pay attention to

Work in groups and survey your group members about what they do to be greener people. Then report it to your class. Pay attention to the stress, liaison, incomplete plosion and intonation.

Example:

A: 'Wha(t) do you 'often 'do to be a 'greener person?

B: Well, 'I 'always 'shut off the electricity when I 'am not 'using it.

A: 'Good. 'What about you, 'John?

C: ...



1a Read and understand.

Look at the pictures. Do you know what they are? Choose the right picture for each paragraph.







In many countries, people produce power from coal, but it is very dirty and causes acid rain. Some countries use nuclear energy to produce power. However, nuclear power can be very dangerous. To solve the energy problem, people all over the world are looking for new ways to produce power.

China is one of the first countries in the world to use biogas technology. Farmers recycle straw, grass and animal waste to make biogas. This renewable energy is used in people's everyday lives. Its key disadvantage is that the process requires a long time (up to 30 days) and the cost is high.

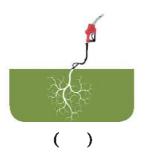
Electric vehicles were developed in the 1990s. On April 11, 2010, a new kind of electric vehicle named "Yezi" was shown in the 2010 Shanghai World Expo. It produces electricity from the sun, the wind and CO₂. It can not only protect the environment but also save energy. It's too small to hold many people, but larger models will be developed in the near future.

_____ In China, the best-known maglev train is the German-built one in Shanghai. It takes people just 7 minutes to go to the airport 30 km away. The train can reach a top speed of 431 km per hour. It is quiet and quick. There is no wheel noise, because there are no wheels. Maglev trains are very energy-efficient and do not pollute the air. However, maglev guide paths are much more expensive than traditional steel railways.

1b Read 1a and match the words with the pictures on Page 48.

A. acid rain B. nuclear energy C. biogas







00000000000000

1c Read 1a again and complete the table.

Item	Advantage	Disadvantage
biogas		
electric vehicle		
maglev train		

Read the passage below and match the pictures with the sentences. Then discuss in detail the use of one energy source.

The sun, wind, waves and heat from deep in the earth are energy sources. They will never run out so they are called renewable sources. In 2011, about 16% of energy used worldwide came from renewable sources. The use of it is increasing rapidly each year.









- 1. Wind can produce electricity in many places.
- 2. People use sunlight to produce electricity.
- 3. Sea waves are used for producing electricity.
- 4. People use hot water or steam from deep in the earth to produce electricity and heat for factories, schools and homes.
- 2b Take notes on your discussion and write a passage with them.

You may begin like this:

Sunlight can produce a lot of energy. People began to use the energy from the sunlight in different ways many years ago...



Read through Sections A-C and fill in the blanks with the correct words.

Grammar

Compound Sentence

Recycling can protect the environment, _____ it can save money, too.

Some things we have done are good for the earth _____ some are bad.

We should do everything to protect it, ____ we'll be punished and lose our home.

People produce power from coal, _____ it is very dirty and causes acid rain.

Functions

Would you like to be	a person?
First, you ought to _	the electricity when you leave a room.
said than dor	ie.
Actions speak	_ than words.
The train can	a top speed of 431 km per hour.

How well do you know Sections A-C? Now do the following tasks and check.

Read the passage and answer the questions on Page 50.

Forests are the lungs of the earth. Without them, it cannot breathe. It needs its forests to remove carbon dioxide from the air and to make oxygen. In many countries, such as New Zealand, Canada, and Brazil, forests were cut down to provide wood to build houses. Many young volunteers around the world are working in their holidays to plant new trees to replace them.

These young men and women face many difficulties when they plant new trees. The weather may be very hot and dry or it may be very cold and wet. There are often many insects that bite these planters on their legs, arms, and faces while they work. They carry heavy bags of small trees, and working in the mountains can be dangerous.

Tree planters are changing the world. They plant different types of trees so that birds and animals can live in the forests. Even though tree planting is very difficult, they love their work. They believe that in 50 years their little trees will become beautiful forests.



- 1. How do you understand "Forests are the lungs of the earth"?
- 2. What difficulties do tree planters face when they plant trees?
- 3. Why do they plant different kinds of trees?
- 4. What will happen if we do not plant new forests?
- 5. Would you like to be a tree planter when you are older? Why or why not?

Project

	TOJOUL ~~~	
Finding the	e Greenest Person	
1. Answer the following ques	stions to see how green y	ou are.
1) Do you recycle newspapers	or cans?	
A. Often. (2)	B. Seldom. (1)	C. Never. (0)
2) What do you usually take?		
A. A bath. (0)	B. A shower. (2)	
3) When you have a short journ	ey, how do you usually go ther	e?
A. Walk or ride a bike. (3)	B. Go by car. (0)	C. Go by bus. (2)
4) What do you usually do whe	n you see others littering?	
A. Stop them. (2)	B. Pick the litter up. (1)	C. Do nothing. (0)
5) How often do you use paper	towels?	
A. Often. (0)	B. Seldom. (1)	C. Never. (2)
6) How often do you eat fast fo	od?	
A. Often. (0)	B. Seldom. (1)	C. Never. (2)
7) What type of bags do you us	e for shopping?	
A. Baskets or cloth bags.(3)	B. Reused plastic bags. (1)	C. New plastic bags.(0)
8) How often do you turn off the	e lights when you leave a room'	?
A. Nearly always. (2)	B. Seldom. (1)	C. Never. (0)
Scores: 0-4 You have	not started turning green ye	t!
5-9 You are pa		
•	edium green. Try harder.	
	right green, but do not stop	trying.
		. 12.2

2. Give your points for your answers. What is your total? Compare your result with your group members' and tell the class who is the greenest in your group and give reasons.



Review of Units 1-2

- Listen and read the following sentences and pay attention to the pause, weak form, liaison and incomplete plosion. Then read after the tape and imitate.
 - 1) None of us likes pollution.
 - 2) We shouldn'(t) spiţ in public.
 - 3) Everyone shoul(d) care for wild animals and plant more trees.
 - 4) People produce power from coal,/but it is very dirty an(d) causes aci(d) rain.
 - 5) I have been to London this summer holiday with my parents.
 - 6) Maria has gone to Paris./She is still there an(d) will be bac(k) nex(t) week.
- 2 Read and complete the sentences. The first letters are given. Then listen and check your answers.

1) The main p of the activity is to raise money for children in poor areas.
2) Our country provides good m treatment for homeless people.
3) I think the government should o us more job opportunities.
4) A the sun was shining, it wasn't very warm.
5) With his help, I've made great p in English learning.
6) With the development of science and t, our country is getting stronger and stronger.
7) If you want to go on the trip, you must get your parents' a
Someone s my bicycle while I was shopping yesterday.
9) Sweets are h to children's teeth.
10) In Sweden, it is against the l to hit a child.
Complete the conversation with the given words.
along the sent to

Bob: Hi, Jim! Have you _____ seen the movie, *The 11th hour*?

Jim: No, I haven't seen it _____. What's it mainly about?

Bob: Environmental problems. I have _____ seen it twice and I think it's wonderful.

Jim: Oh, I haven't seen a movie _____ a long time and I like the movie about environmental problems.

B. Listen again and complete the passage.

Li Fei c	an't sleep well at night and is alwa	ays Because the heavy
traffic makes	s It keeps him	until midnight. And it's always
	when he waits for a bus. The sky is	all the time. Luckily, the
government	many measures to solv	re the problems. Li Fei and Wei Hua
decide to	a club " Greener China" to	protect the environment.

7 Cloze test.

Doctor Smith took over a medical clinic in Toronto. One day, he visited a 74-year-old __(1) __, Mrs. Wilson, in her home in the village nearby. She had stayed in bed __(2) __ 40 years. The doctor examined her but couldn't find __(3) __ wrong. He asked her daughter __(4) __ she was in bed. To his surprise, 40 years __(5) __ a village doctor asked Mrs. Wilson to stay in bed __(6) __ a bad cold. He told her not to __(7) __ until he returned. The village doctor never returned, so she __(8) __ in bed ever since. Her daughter __(9) __ after her up to now. The daughter has never married. She has never had any job except taking care of her mother. Now Mrs. Wilson's muscles are weak. And she has put on __(10) __ weight. She may never walk again.

() 1) A. man	B. doctor	C. girl	D. woman
() 2) A. for	B. in	C. during	D. on
() 3) A. everything	B. nothing	C. anything	D. something
() 4) A. what	B. where	C. why	D. when
() 5) A. before	B. early	C. later	D. ago
() 6) A. because of	B. because	C. as	D. since
() 7) A. get in	B. get on	C. get up	D. get off
() 8) A. was	B. has been	C. have been	D. is
() 9) A. has looked	B. looked	C. was looking	D. will look
()10) A. a lot of	B. many	C. a few	D. a number of

Read the passage and complete the following tasks.

China's Green Beat is the first green media in China. It provides enjoyable short films to make people care for environmental problems. It has created more than ten short films in order to teach people about environmental problems through these stories.

Shanghai: Over-Packaging

In recent years, the packaging for certain products, for example, mooncakes, has become very beautiful but excessive. The cost of the packaging is often higher than that of the product. The over-packaging of goods creates a lot of waste, seriously wastes our natural resources and pollutes our environment. This new video, produced in Shanghai, visits markets...

Kunming: No Car Day

September 22 is "No Car Day" around the world, but Kunming is the only Chinese city to have "No Car Day" every month. It is on the last Saturday from 9:00 a.m. to 5:00 p.m. The policy requires that only taxis, buses, bikes and special purpose vehicles are allowed to travel anywhere in the city. On September 22, the air quality in Kunming was reported to be much better because of fewer vehicles.

- to be much better because of fewer vehicles.

 1) What is China's Green Beat?

 A. A factory that produces short films.

 B. A farm that produces green vegetables.

 C. An organization that takes people to protect the environment.

 D. A media that produces short films about environmental problems.

 2) According to Paragraph 2, over-packaging means_____.

 A. large package B. too many packages

 C. use too many materials to make the goods look wonderful

 D. use too many materials to protect the goods from damage (/ dæmid3/n. harm)

 3) What is the traffic policy on "No Car Day" in Kunming?

 4) If you want to make some short films for China's Green Beat, which of the following can be included?

 □ reusing □ recycling □ historical events □ green lifestyle □ cultural differences
- Work in groups. Try to search for pictures and information about greener ways of transportation, such as walking on foot and riding a bicycle. Then exchange your information with your partners and have a discussion.
- Write a short passage to a magazine to introduce greener methods of transportation.

UNIT 3

English Around the World

I have a poster of Mickey

Mouse and Donald Duck.

TOPIC 1 English is widely spoken throughout the world.



Oh, it's

so nice!

1a Listen, look and say.

Kangkang: Hi, boys, come and have a look! I have a poster of Mickey Mouse

and Donald Duck.

Li Xiang: Oh, it's so nice! You can

stick it on the wall.

Wang Junfeng: That's a good idea. Guess

what! My parents and I are going to visit Disneyland, near Los Angeles. I will be

able to see more cartoon characters.

Kangkang: Oh, you're so lucky! Disneyland is enjoyed by millions of people

from all over the world. I hope I can go there one day.

Li Xiang: Me, too. Are you ready for your trip?

Wang Junfeng: Yes, of course. I can't wait to fly there!

Kangkang: You'll have a good chance to practice English there.

Wang Junfeng: You're right. English is spoken as the main language in America.

Yeah. It is also widely used throughout the world now. Li Xiang:

Wang Junfeng: But I'm not good at English. I'm a little afraid.

Kangkang: Don't worry. Try your best and work much harder from now on.

Wang Junfeng: Thanks. I will.

1b Listen to 1a and choose the correct answers.

() 1.	Who	is	going	to	Disneyland [®]	?
---	------	-----	----	-------	----	-------------------------	---

A. Wang Junfeng.

B. Wang Junfeng's parents.

C. Wang Junfeng and his parents.

) 2. What language is widely used throughout the world now? (

A. Chinese.

B. English.

C. French.

) 3. What are the boys mainly talking about? (

A. English.

B. Visiting Disneyland. C. A poster.

1c	Read 1a again and fill in the blanks.		
	Wang Junfeng and his parents will go to Disneyland in Ar	nerio	ea next week.
	Disneyland by millions of people throughout	ut th	ie world. He
	will have a good chance to because English	is i	mportant for
	communication there. English as the main language	age i	n America. It
	also widely around the world.		
2a	Study the example and find out how to change the ac	ctive	e voice into
	the passive voice. Then complete the sentences.		
	Example:		
	They make bikes.		
	0 2 8		
	Bikes are made by them.		
	1. Many people use computers.		
	→Computers by		
	2. The workers plant trees in the garden.		
	→Trees in the garden the workers.		
	3. Lots of foreigners enjoy Beijing Opera.		
	→Beijing Opera	— •	
	4. Many visitors visit the Great Wall every year.		
2b	→The Great Wall		
20	Work in groups of three and play the game by the follo	wing	g example.
	Many people English is English is spoken		THE PART OF THE PA
	speak English. Spoken. by many people. Befo		stening, try to
130			pronunciations)
E A	words	s in th	ne statements.
3	Listen to the passage and mark T (True) or F (False).		
	1. Walt Disney was a great film-maker as well as an artist.	()
	2. Walt used to sit in the family garage and draw pictures.	()
	3. One day, a mouse came and played on the floor of the garage.	()
	4. When he first met the mouse, Walt was afraid.	()
	5. At last, he was pleased with one of his pictures of the mouse.		
	He called it Mickey Mouse.	()

What language is

spoken there?

Spanish.



1a Look, listen and say.

(Jane is talking with her father before he goes to Cuba.)

Jane: Dad, why are you packing your bags?

Father: I'm going to Cuba on business tonight. Have you seen my passport?

Jane: It's in your night table. Dad, is English spoken as the official language in Cuba?

Father: No, Spanish is spoken as the official language there.

Jane: Is Spanish similar to English?

Father: Not really. Perhaps a few words are the same.

Jane: Oh, I see. Is it possible for you to have trouble communicating?

Father: Yes. I don't think I will have any long conversations in Spanish. If necessary, I'll ask an interpreter for help.

Jane: Will the interpreter explain to you the culture of the country?

Father: Of course. Understanding the language and the culture can help me work well.

Jane: Have a good trip. I wish you success!

1b Listen to 1a and mark T (True) or F (False).

1. Jane's father is going to Cuba on business tonight.	()
--	---	---

2. English is spoken as the official language in Cuba. ()

3. English is not similar to Spanish. ()

4. It is impossible for Jane's father to have trouble in Cuba.

5. An interpreter can help Jane's father understand Spanish and the culture. ()

1c Practice the conversation in 1a. Then complete the table and make up a new conversation based on 1a.

Country	Official language
France	
Japan	
Singapore	
Canada	

2 Complete the sentences with the given phrases.

	on business a few the same have trouble ask for help similar to
	1. His new pen looks one of mine.
	2. There are only potatoes left.
	3. The twin sisters have nose.
	4. Bob is coming to Beijing next Sunday.
	5. Many kids getting along with their parents nowadays.
	6. When you are in trouble, you can your teacher
3	Listen to the passage and answer the questions.
	1. What does Mary do?
	2. Why does Mary have no trouble understanding people from different countries?
	3. Where is English used as a second language?
	4. Where did Mary go last month?
	5. Can Mary speak Chinese?

4 Make sentences with the passive voice after the example. Then read them aloud, paying attention to the stress and weak form.

Example:



flowers/water/he

The 'flowers are 'watered by him 'every 'day.



cake/divide into pieces/she



carrots/dig/rabbit

3.



baby/lay in the bed/woman

4.

many problems/cause/ large population 5.

Fuwa/love/people



1a Read and understand.

Discuss the two questions before reading.

- 1. Is English spoken by the largest number of people in the world?
- 2. When and where do you use English?

English Around the World (I)

There are more than 3 000 languages spoken in the world. Of all these languages, English is the most widely used. Recent surveys show that more than 500 million people speak English as their mother tongue.

From its roots in England, the language was spread around the world by English traders and English governments in new lands. One of these new lands became the United States of America. The population of the United States is 309 million, making it the country with the largest number of native English speakers.





About 300 million people speak English as their second language. There are even more people, like some in Europe as well as in China and Japan, who study English as a foreign language.

English has become the base language for international business, for the world's airlines and

even for the Internet. Whatever language people speak, they need to know some English if they work in these fields. It is clear that the English language is becoming more important.

1b Read 1a and complete the following tasks.

- 1. Underline the topic sentence of the passage.
- 2. Find out what the red numbers refer to.

Just find the numbers and read the information around them.

2



1c	Read	1a	again	and	fill	in	the	blanks.
----	------	----	-------	-----	------	----	-----	---------

road in again and in in silo blanks.				
1. a native language, such as in and				
2. the language				
English is 3. a foreign language, such as in some European countries,				
used as and				
4. the language for international business, the world's				
airlines and the				
Complete the passage with the correct forms of the verbs.				
English is the most widely used international language nowadays. It				
(speak) as the mother tongue in such countries as the United Kingdom, the				
United States, Canada, Australia and New Zealand. In many other countries,				
people(speak) English as their second language. There are about				
750 million English speakers in the world. English (use) in many				
different fields of life, such as business, tourism and technology. Business				
people(use) English at international conferences, and tourists				
(speak) English when they go abroad. Many English signs				
(see) in public places. A wide knowledge of English helps us follow English				
television programs and (enjoy) interesting films. The English				

Work in groups and find the answers to the questions on the Internet.

Then share the information with your group members.

language _____(play) an important part in our lives.



- 1. Where is Chinese mainly spoken?
- 2. How many people speak Chinese as their second language? Where are these people from?
- 3. How many people are learning Chinese as a foreign language? Why are they learning Chinese?

3b Write a passage based on the study in 3a.

You may start like this:

Nowadays Chinese is becoming more and more popular all over the world. It's mainly spoken in ...



Read through Sections A-C and fill in the blanks with the correct words.

Grammar

Passive Voice (I) Disneyland _____ by millions of people from all over the world. English ____ as the official language in Cuba? Of all these languages, English ____ the most widely ____. Functions

I can't	_ to fly there!
Try your	and work much harder from now on.
a goo	od trip. I you success!

How well do you know Sections A-C? Now do the following tasks and check.

1a Read the passage and complete the table on Page 62.

English Around the World (II)

English has become widely used around the world. Why has this happened? We may find the answer from history.

In the nineteenth century, Great Britain became a powerful country, so English became an international language. Then, since the 1950s, the USA has become more and more powerful. The American computer and



Internet industry have taken the leading position in the world. As a result, the Internet has helped English to become much more popular.

China, a country with the largest population in the world, has encouraged more people to learn English since the 1970s. Since the 1990s, English learning has been very popular with Chinese people. Many of them have done well in English and have made great progress in speaking it.





Now, students are required to learn English, and the study of English is regarded as a very important industry in China as well as in the rest of the world.

Why has English become so popular?				
in the 19th century	Great Britain English became			
since the 1950s	The USA The Internet			
since the 1970s	China			
now	The study of English			

1b Retell the passage in pairs based on the table in 1a.

Project

Debating Which Language Will Be More Widely Used

- 1. The topic of the debate is "Which language will be more widely used in the world, Chinese or English?"
- 2. Divide the class into two groups and each group holds different opinions.
- 3. Discuss in groups and list your opinions. The following information may help you.

Importance	Advantage	Development	Conclusion

4. Debate between two groups.

TOPIC 2 Some things usually have different meanings in different cultures.



1a Listen, look and say.

(Wang Junfeng and his parents are going to the USA. Michael and Kangkang are going to see them off. Now they are on their way to the airport.)

Wang Junfeng: I can't believe that I'm flying to Disneyland. I'm so excited.

Kangkang: Of course you are.

(Michael sees a stranger putting out his hand with his thumb raised.)

Michael: Stop, please! Driver: What's up?

Michael: The stranger is asking for a ride. Look at his gesture!

(The driver stops the minibus.)

Foreigner: Excuse me, could you please give me a ride to the airport?

Driver: Sure. We're going to the same place. Get on, please.

Foreigner: Thank you very much.

(They reach the airport twenty minutes later.)

Kangkang: What time is your flight?

Wang Junfeng: At 5 o'clock. My uncle is meeting us tomorrow. But I'm still

worried about my English.

Kangkang: No need to worry. You can buy the guidebook, *A Tour in the USA*. Wang Junfeng: Good idea. I hope I won't have much difficulty in communication.

Michael: Whenever you need help, send me an e-mail or call me.

Wang Junfeng: Thank you very much. I have to go now. Bye!

1b Listen to 1a and number the following pictures.



1c Read 1a and mark T (True) or F (False).

- 1. Michael and Kangkang are going to see Wang Junfeng's family off at a bus station.(
- 2. Wang Junfeng's family and the stranger are leaving for Disneyland. ()



- 3. The driver stops the minibus and gives the stranger a ride.
- 4. Michael tells Wang Junfeng to send him an e-mail or call him if he needs any help. ()
- 2 Listen to the passage and choose the correct answers.
 -) 1. Where does Bob come from?
 - A. London.
- B. America.
- C. Australia.
-) 2. When is he going to London? (
 - A. On Sunday.
- B. Next Saturday. C. Next Sunday.
- () 3. How many people are going to see him off?
 - A. Two.
- B. Three.
- C. Four.
- () 4. Who is meeting Bob at the airport?
 - A. His uncle.
- B. His aunt.
- C. His classmate.
- Study the sentences carefully and pay attention to the verbs and the time. Then choose the correct answers to complete the sentences.
 - 1. When is Bob going to London? He is going to London next Sunday.
 - 2. When is Wang Junfeng's uncle meeting him? He is meeting him tomorrow.
 - 3. When is Wang Junfeng leaving? He is leaving in an hour.
 - A. I (move/am moving) to Shanghai next month.
 - B. They (start/are starting) at 8:00 a.m. tomorrow.
 - C. We are traveling to Beijing (next Sunday/on Sundays).
- 4 Make up conversations in pairs by following the example.

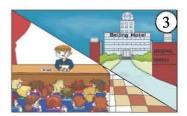


Example:

- A: When are you traveling to Canada?
- B: I'm traveling tomorrow.
- A: Who are you going with?
- B: I'm going with my friends.

travel to Canada/tomorrow/go with





board/

go to the central park/

arrive at/at 7 o'clock/ give ... a speech

in several minutes/pick... up this weekend/give... a ride



1a Look, listen and say.

(Jane meets Kangkang and Yukio at the school gate.)

Jane: (Waving) Hi, Kangkang and Yukio!

Yukio: (Bowing) Hello, Jane!

Kangkang: Yukio, when Jane says "Hi" she

waves her hand, but when you say

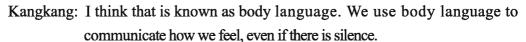
"Hello" you bow.

Yukio: In Japan, we bow when we are saying

hello as a sign of respect.

Jane: In Canada, we wave as a sign of

peace and friendship.



Yukio: Did you notice that Miss Wang smiles when she is happy, and when

she is angry she puts her hands on her hips? Then I know whether

she will praise or punish us.

Jane: (Laughing) When my little sister is angry, she crosses her arms and

stamps her foot!

Kangkang: I wonder if body language means the same thing in all cultures.

Jane: We should do some research. People could communicate better if they

knew more about their body language.

Yukio: Let's ask Miss Wang and Ms. Jones if they will help us with our

research.

Jane: That is a good idea. Goodbye, Kangkang. Goodbye, Yukio.

Kangkang and Yukio: (Waving) Goodbye, Jane.

1b Listen to 1a and mark T (True) or F (False).

1.	. When Yukio says "Hi" he waves his hand.	()

- 2. Bowing is a sign of peace. ()
- 3. When Miss Wang puts her hands on her hips, she will punish students. ()
- 4. When Jane's sister stamps her foot, she may be angry. ()
- 5. The three kids are talking about body language. ()





1c	Read 1a and fill in the blanks.				
	Waving and bowing are examples of language. In Japan, people				
	bow as a sign of and and				
	In all cultures, people smile when they are Body language				
	can mean different things in different If we understood body language				
	from different countries, we could better.				
2a	Look at these gestures that are common in the USA. Discuss and				
	match each gesture with its meaning below.				
	Good luck It's a secret Calm down.				
	I'm puzzled I'm just kidding Have a victory.				
2b	Do you know any other gestures? In groups, act them out and guess what				
	they mean.				
3	Put these sentences in the correct order to form a passage.				
	(1) Body language means different things in different cultures.				
	() In Canada, nodding your head shows agreement.				
	() But people shake their heads from side to side to show agreement in India.				
	() So, to avoid misunderstandings, you should study both spoken and body languages.				
	() However, in India, men often hold hands as a sign of friendship.				
	() North American men seldom hold hands in public.				
	() For example, the signs of showing agreement and friendship are different				
1	from culture to culture.				
4	Discuss the typical body language your teachers/classmates often				
	use with the following questions. Then report to the whole class,				
	paying attention to the pause, liaison and intonation.				
	1. What is his/her body language?				
	2. When is it used?				
	3. What does it show? You may begin like this:				
	Miss Wang's typical body language is It is a sign of When she, she				
	often uses this body language				



1a Read and understand.

Do you know the meaning of each phrase about dogs?

a homeless dog a mad dog a running dog a dog catching a mouse

Some things usually have different meanings in different cultures. Here are some words about animals that are used differently in western cultures and Chinese culture.

Most phrases in Chinese about the dog, such as "a homeless dog", "a mad dog", "a running dog" and "a dog catching a mouse", have negative meanings. But in western countries, dogs are considered honest and good friends of humans. The word, "dog", has positive meanings. For example, "you are a lucky dog" means you are a lucky person. And "every dog has its day" means each person has good luck at times.



As we know, dragons are very important in Chinese culture. In ancient times, dragons were regarded as strong and magical creatures. They brought hope and good luck. The ancient emperors compared themselves to dragons. Nowadays, many parents want their children to become "dragons". But in western cultures, dragons were dangerous animals. Heroes killed them to protect people.

Some things have similar meanings in Chinese culture and western cultures. The rose is regarded as a symbol of love in both China and some western countries. People in China and the West think the rose also stands for peace, courage and friendship. When we pay attention to the cultural meanings of words, we will understand them better.

1b Read 1a and choose the correct answers.

- 1. The title of the passage may be _
 - A. Animals and Plants
 - B. China and Foreign Countries
 - C. Different Cultures, Different Meanings
 - D. Positive and Negative Meanings

2. In China, many parents want their children to become "dragons". The "dragons"	

000000000000000

2. In China, many parer	nts want their childre	en to become "dragons"	'. The "dragons'
here mean			
A. successful peop	le B. children	C. strong people	D. creatures
3. In western countrie	s, heroes killed dr	agons to protect peop	ole. This shows
dragons are conside	ered to be	<u>.</u>	
A. brave	B. strong	C. lovely	D. dangerous
4. In Paragraph 3, the	underlined word '	'regarded" means	·
A. considered	B. given	C. looked	D. watched

1C Complete the table based on 1a. You can also add something else.

Plant and animal	In Chinese culture	In western culture
dog		
dragon		
rose		

2 Complete the sentences with the correct forms of the given phrases.

	pay attention to	stand for	at times	regard as	compare to
1	. People say the ro	se often		love.	
2	. Dogs are	h	onest and	good friends	of humans.
3	. You need to		the differ	ence more.	
4	. Robert Burns		_ his love		a red rose.
5	. Everybody make	s mistakes		•	

Write a passage with the title Different Cultures, Different Meanings based on the table. You can add more items.

Plant and animal	In Chinese culture	In western culture	
peacock	goodness/beauty/peace	pride	
bat	long life/happiness	bad luck	
bamboo	happiness/peace	wisdom/power	



Read through Sections A-C and understand the usage of the underlined parts.

Grammar

Showing the Future by Present Continuous

I'm flying to Disneyland.	He is going to London next Sunday.
My uncle is meeting us tomorrow.	When is Bob going to London?

Functions

What's up?	No need to worry.	
Excuse me, could	l you please give me a <u>ride</u> to the airport?	
Whenever you n	eed help, send me an e-mail or call me.	

How well do you know Sections A-C? Now do the following tasks and check.

- 1a Read the passage and put the sentences in the correct places.
 - A. It is possible to tell whether a person is American or British by listening to his or her speech.
 - B. Now, English is the language spoken by most people in countries like Canada, America and Australia.
 - C. They also borrowed "tofu" and "kowtow" from Chinese.
 - D. Sometimes different people use different words to mean the same thing.

E	inglish is	spoken	by people	in many	places.	It began	in England	but	spread
as the	British p	eople lef	their cou	ntry and	made ne	ew homes	S		

After many years, the English language began to change. The changes were mainly expressions and spellings. ______ People in England say "underground" while people in America say "subway". In America an elevator starts on the first floor, but in Britain it starts on the ground floor. "Colour" and "centre" are British spellings while "color" and "center" are American spellings for the same words. Pronunciation of words and ways of speaking have changed as well. _____



The English language has also changed by borrowing words from other
languages. The Americans borrowed "cent" from old French and "cookbook" from
German.

The English language is changing all the time, but people from English-speaking countries are still able to understand each other.

1b Read 1a again and mark T (True) or F (False).

- 1. English is the language spoken by most people in Canada, America and Australia.
- 2. The English language has changed little in the past few centuries.
- 3. American English is totally different from British English. ()
- 4. It's possible for people from English-speaking countries to understand each other in English.

Project

Dealing With Wang Junfeng's Difficulties

- 1. Read the letter and find out Wang Junfeng's difficulties in English communication.
 - A. Expressions
- B. Body language
- C. Accent
- D. Spelling

)

Dear Michael,

How are you doing? I'm writing to you from California. I want to know some differences between British English and American English, especially in expressions, because I have difficulty in understanding the people here. Sometimes I can't follow them. Even worse, I can't understand some of their body language and spelling. Please write back to me soon.

Best wishes to you and your family!

Yours.

Wang Junfeng

- 2. Discuss how to deal with Wang Junfeng's difficulties.
- 3. Help Michael write back to him.

TOPIC 3 Could you give us some advice on how to learn English well?



1a Listen, look and say.

Li Ming: How nice to see you back, Junfeng! How was your trip?

Wang Junfeng: Wonderful! I've been to many places of interest and I enjoyed

myself in Disneyland.

Li Hong: Could you make yourself

understood in the USA?

Wang Junfeng: Not really. Sometimes I got

into trouble. They spoke too quickly for me and there

were many different accents.

I couldn't have long conversations with the people there. I think I

should work harder at English.

Li Ming: Yes, I agree. I know oral English is very important, but I dare

not speak English in public. And I always feel sleepy in English

classes. I'm really afraid of the final exam.

Li Hong: I'm afraid, too. And it's very difficult for me to remember new words.

Wang Junfeng: Me, too. I've worked hard at it for a whole week, but it seems that

I haven't made any progress. I don't know what to do. At times I

feel like giving up.

Li Hong: Please don't let these difficulties discourage you. Perhaps we can ask

Kangkang for help. He is good at English.

1b Listen to 1a and number the problems.

It seems that I haven't made any progress, though I work hard.
It's too difficult for me to remember new words.
I dare not speak English in public.
Americans spoke too quickly.
I couldn't have long conversations with American people.
I always feel sleepy in English classes.

1c	Read 1a and tick the words you find in it. Study the words and pay
	attention to the word formation.

() wonder	() wonderful	() under	() understand
() quick	() quickly	() courage	() discourage
() real	() really	() sleep	() sleepy

2 Write down new words in the brackets by following the example.

		re + tell	(retel	1)	direct + tion	(direction	on)
9	0	dis + cover	()	ill + ness	()
	(Q)	dis + like	()	develop + ment	()
		in + direct	()	wonder + ful	()
9	0	im + possible	()	home + less	()
	1	un + healthy	()	excite + ing	()
		un + happy	()	snow + y	()
9	0	head + ache	()	main + ly	()
	0	grand + daughter	()	film + maker	()
		fire + place	()	down + stairs	()

3a Listen to the conversation and check Li Ming's difficulties. Then listen again and match them with Miss Wang's suggestions.

Li Ming's difficulty	Miss Wang's suggestion	
() 1. can't read English news	a. take part in the English Corner	
() 2. can't pronounce well	b. copy new words in a notebook	
() 3. forgets new words	and take it with him	
() 4. can't always understand the dialog	c. keep a diary in English	
when watching English movies	d. listen to the tape	
() 5. isn't good at grammar	e. sing English songs	
() 6. isn't good at writing compositions	f. buy a grammar book	

3b Make up conversations in pairs based on 1a and 3a.



1a Look, listen and say.

Wang Junfeng: Kangkang, could you give us some advice

on how to learn English well?

Kangkang: Sure. Two years ago, I was also weak in

English. How to improve it was my biggest

problem. So I turned to Mr. Brown and I've

learned a lot from him.

Wang Junfeng: Great. How do you remember new words?

Kangkang: I always copy new words on pieces of paper, stick them on the

walls in my bedroom or in the living room, and read the words aloud when I see them. I change them often. Also, I always read

the English words on the objects I see.

Li Hong: That sounds interesting. I'll try it. I always read English textbooks,

but some texts are difficult for me. Could you please tell me how

to improve my reading ability?

Kangkang: Do more reading. Try to guess the meanings of new words, and

get the main idea of the article.

Li Ming: Kangkang, I dare not answer questions in class because I'm afraid

of making mistakes.

Kangkang: Don't be shy. Think about your answer, take a deep breath and

smile, and then answer the question. Smiling is always helpful.

Li Ming: Thank you. I'll give it a try.

1b Listen to 1a and fill in the blanks. Then check the sentences which use wh-/how + to do.

1. Could you give us some advice on to learn English well?	()
2. How to it was my biggest problem.	()
3. How do you new words?	()
4. Could you please tell me how to my reading ability?	()
5. Try to the meanings of new words, and get the		
idea of the article.	()

1c Read 1a and complete the passage.

Kangkang gives his friends some _____ on how to learn English well. Wang Junfeng thinks it is difficult to _____ new words, so Kangkang advises him to ____ new words on pieces of ____ and ___ them on the wall.

Li Hong says she always reads the English textbook but some texts are ____, so she wants to ask about how to ____ her reading ability. Kangkang's suggestion is to read more, ____ the meanings of new words, and get the ____ of the article.

Li Ming dare not answer questions in class because he is afraid of making ___ . "Think about your answer, take a deep ____ and ___ " is Kangkang 's answer.

2 Study the sentences with *how to* in 1a and complete the sentences with the phrases in the box. Then read them and pay attention to the stress and liaison.

what time to meet them
where to go
whether to go to the party
what to do
which one to buy



What time?

Example:

He'wants to'go on a'trip. He is'thinking about 'where to'go



 He has 'difficulty in 'learning 'English.
 He 'asks Kangkang



2. He is 'going to 'meet his 'friends.

But he 'forgot _____



3. There are 'many 'kinds of 'toothpaste.

He can't 'decide



- 4. He 'has a lot of 'work to do. He is 'wondering
- Work in pairs and make up a conversation. One of you talks about your difficulties in learning English and the other gives some suggestions.



1a Read and understand.

000000000000

Try to talk about English learning problems, ask questions and share ideas with your teachers and classmates.

Underline the phrases or sentences related to the following words in the passage. Then guess the meanings of these words.

preview review retell translate stick

(Miss Wang is holding a class meeting on how to learn English. She asks two students to report the results of their discussion.)

I'm very glad to share our group's opinions with you. Kangkang said that he previewed the day's lesson before class, took notes in class and reviewed them after class. Lin Ping said, "Read a passage. Then try to retell it yourself." Yu Zhen thought studying grammar was important when learning English. I myself prefer watching English movies, though sometimes I can't understand them exactly. These are our opinions. Thank you for listening!

It's an honor to talk with all of you here. Our group agrees with some of Group One's opinions. However, we have some other ideas. Xu Duoduo said that joining an English club was the best way to improve her English. Cheng Le advised us to read a good English newspaper. But she said, "We shouldn't translate every word when we are reading." Shu Yan told us we should speak English with our teachers, classmates and even with foreigners as often as possible. That's all. Thanks.





Good job! You two have told us many good methods. Each of us can use one or more of them. But remember to choose the ones that suit you best. I'm sure that you will make great progress as long as you stick to them. And I think keeping a diary in English is a good way to improve your writing. Also, the chants, songs and riddles in our textbooks are helpful.





1b Read 1a and fill in the first two columns. Then tick the approaches you agree with.

Who	Approach	Your opinion
	preview, take notes, review	
Lin Ping		
Yu Zhen		
Student 1	watch English movies	
	join the English club	
Cheng Le		
	speak English with others	
Miss Wang		

- 1C Work in pairs and discuss how to learn English based on the table in 1b. You can also add some new approaches of your own.
- 2 Complete the conversation with the correct forms of the given words or phrases in the box.

agree with share ... with review preview advise ... to (do) as ... as possible

(Helen is _____ her study experience ____ Li Hong.)

Helen: I think _____ can help us better understand a new lesson.

Li Hong: I ____ you. I also take a lot of notes in class.

Helen: We need to ____ what we have learned ____ often ____.

Li Hong: Yeah. Miss Wang always ____ us ___ review our lessons before doing homework.

Helen: Good study methods can help us achieve better results with less effort.

Read Li Ming's question in "Ask About English" column from the website BBC Learning English and write back to help him.

Question:

I'm a shy boy, and I don't like to talk. My spoken English is not good because I'm afraid of answering the teacher's questions in English class. And after class, I have no chance to practice speaking English. What should I do?

Li Ming

Answer:

Hello, Li Ming. It's an interesting question ...



Read through Sections A-C. Then group the words and fill in the blanks.

Grammar

Word Formation	
Derivations	
Compounds	
I -	mpossible, homeless, development, indirect, exciting, ell, unhappy, downstairs, snowy, granddaughter
Wh-/How + to do	

Wh-/How + to do		
I don't know(what/what to) do	
He is thinking about _	(where to/	where) go.
Could you give us som	e advice on	(what to/how to) learn English well?
(How to/Wher	e to) improve it v	vas my biggest problem.

Functions

Could you make yourself_	(understand/understood) in the USA?
I (dare/dared) not s	speak English in public.
I'm sure that you will	(make/made) great progress as long as you stick to them.

How well do you know Sections A-C? Now do the following tasks and check.

1a Read the passage and write a proper title on the line.

Are you facing problems in learning English? If so, the following two ways will help you to learn it more easily and with more fun!

"I download English songs from the Internet. It has really improved my listening. What's more, I am happier when I study this way," said one junior student. Listening to your favorite English songs is actually an effective way. Before you listen, you can read first and find out what the song is about. While listening, pick some useful words or phrases. A dictionary may also be helpful if necessary.

UNIT 3

000000000000

Watching a movie is another good and interesting way. "It is wonderful to watch movies, and it can help your English a lot!" said a junior three student. "You can also imitate the pronunciation of the actors." So choose your favorite movie before watching. Then have paper and a pen ready as you may want to write down useful words or phrases. In this way, you can increase the number of words and understand the dialogs better.

Enjoy using the two ways, and you are sure to learn faster and do better!

1b Read 1a and complete the table.

Way	Step	Effect
	1 first and find out the	1 the listening.
listening		2. Be to study.
to songs	2 some words or phrases.	
	3. Use a if necessary.	
	1 favorite movies.	Increase the number of
watching	2. Imitate the pronunciation.	and understand
movies	3. Have paper and a pen	better.
	4. Write down words or phrases.	
By doing	so, you will learn English and do	

Project

Solving English Learning Problems

1. Work in groups of four to discuss your English learning problems and give advice based on the table.

Skill	Problem	Advice
listening		
speaking		
reading		
writing		

- 2. Each group member should choose one skill and then write a paragraph based on your discussion.
- 3. Each group should combine four paragraphs to form a passage and share it in class.

Review of Unit 3

Review of Unit 3			
1 Tick the number of different pronunciations the underlined letter	has	in	each
sentence. Then listen and check your answer. You should also page	ay a	atte	ntior
to the liaison in each sentence.			
1) Please wave your hands after you pack your bag. 4	3	2	1
2) He smiles when he finds the answer to the riddle.	3	2	1
3) I decided to listen to his advice about road accidents. 4	3	2	1
4) Students can communicate with foreigners if they study English well.	3	2	1
5) The model rocket is made of cotton and plastic bottles. 4	3	2	1
6) Nick has lots of maps and dreams of seeing aliens with his own eyes. 4	3	2	1
2 Complete the passage with the correct forms of the given words	or p	hr	ases
in the box.			
method as long as be weak in communicate take a deep breath	ret	ell	
Onl English is an immediate and of learning English If you			:4
Oral English is an important part of learning English. If you			
the following advice may help you. First, you should try your best to spea		_	
class. Don't be shy. If necessary, just and smile before speak you'd better take part in the English Corner and with otl			
as possible. Finally, it's also a good way to read aloud or			
yourself to practice more you stick to these			
make progress.		•	
3 Fill in the blanks with the correct forms of the given words in the	ne k	orac	ckets
1) Lily's dad (leave for) Japan on business next Monday.			
2) They were lost. They didn't know (how, get) to the bus	stat	ion	
3) Many buildings (build) by the company every year.	Stat.		•
4) The new movie, <i>Avatar</i> ; (enjoy) by lots of children.			
5) Chinese (speak) by a large number of people in the wor	ld.		
6) Mary has to learn (what, do) first.			
6) Mary has to learn (what, do) first. 4 Fill in the blanks with the correct forms of the given words.			

2) I find it _____ (possible) to finish so much work in such a short time.

Review of Unit 3													
------------------	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

3) We had a	(discuss) about the differences between British English a	nd
American English last	week.	
4) You can speak English	n very well if you pay more attention to your	
(pronounce).		
5) My parents always	(courage) me in my choice of jobs.	

Read the passage and answer the questions.

Do you believe that your body talks? Body language seems to be more important than spoken or written language. According to a survey by Edward T. Hall in India, in a daily conversation between two persons, less than 35% of the meaning is communicated by words. So, at least 65% of the meaning is shown by our bodies. The following table shows how each body part communicates, according to the survey.

Body part	The way to move	Meaning
head	nodding the head	"Yes" in most countries; "No" in some parts of Greece, Bulgaria, and Turkey
eye	closing eves	"I'm bored." or "I'm sleepy." in America; "I'm listening and concentrating." in Thailand, Japan, and China
20#	cupping the ear	"I can't hear you." in all countries
ear	pulling the ear	"You are in my heart." for Navajo Indians
	holding the nose	"Something smells bad." in the whole world
nose	pointing to the nose	"It's me." in Japan
arm	folding arms	"I disagree with what I am hearing."
hand	waving hands	"Hello!" or "Goodbye!"

- 1) Who did the survey?
- 2) What does it mean in Japan if somebody closes his eyes when someone else talks?
- 3) When something smells bad, what do people usually do?
- 4) How many body languages are mentioned in the passage? What else can you think of?

UNIT 4 Amazing Science

TOPIC 1 When was it invented?



1a Listen, look and say.

Kangkang: Jane, why are you unhappy?

Jane: Because I was not allowed to play computer games last night.

Kangkang: It's bad for your health if you spend too much time on them.

Jane: Maybe you're right.

(Kangkang shows a model to Jane.)

Kangkang: Look at this.

Jane: A model rocket! Who made it?

Kangkang: It was made by me.

Jane: Wow! What's it made of?

Kangkang: It's made of metal. Do you know what a rocket

is used for?

Jane: Sure. It's used for sending satellites or spaceships into space.

Kangkang: You're right. I've learned a lot about spaceships from Mr. Brown and

then I made this model rocket. I wish I could go into space some day.

Jane: I hope your dream will come true.

1b Listen to 1a and mark T (True) or F (False).

- 1. Jane is unhappy because she was not allowed to go to a party last night. (
- 2. Kangkang's father made a model rocket for him. ()
- 3. The rocket is made of metal. ()
- 4. A rocket is used for sending satellites or spaceships into space. ()

1c Read 1a and answer the following questions.

- 1. Why did Kangkang ask Jane not to spend too much time on computer games?
- 2. What's a rocket used for?
- 3. Who taught Kangkang some knowledge about spaceships?
- 4. What's Kangkang's dream?



2 Follow the examples to make up similar conversations.



lock/metal

Example:

- 1. A: What's the *lock* made of?
 - B: It's made of metal.
 - A: What's it used for?
 - B: It's used for locking the door.



computer desk/wood chopsticks/bamboo



paper/wood

- 2. A: What's the *paper* made from?
 - B: It's made from wood.
 - A: What's it used for?
 - B: It's used for writing on.



sweater/cotton



watch/metal

3a A. Listen to the conversations and number the following pictures.







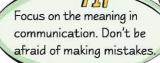
B. Listen again and complete the table.

Invention Item	laptop	cellphone	digital camera
Material			
Usage			
Year			
Country			

3b Work in pairs. Ask and answer questions based on the table in 3a with passive voice.

Example:

- A: What is a laptop made of?
- B: It is made of plastic.
- A: What is it used for?
- B: It is used for studying.
- A: When and where was it developed?
- B: It was developed in Japan in 1985.





1a Look, listen and say.

Michael: Look, a light bulb!

Jane: Yeah. It is widely used by people everywhere. Do you know when it

was invented?

Michael: It was invented in 1879.

Jane: Who invented it?

Michael: Thomas Edison. It's said that he invented more than two thousand things during his life.

Jane: What about the radio?

Michael: The radio was invented by Guglielmo Marconi in 1895. Jane, let's go this way. Look! An airplane, but it's different from today's.

Jane: Yes. It was invented by Wilbur and Orville Wright in 1903.

1b Listen to 1a and choose the correct answers.

- () 1. Where are Michael and Jane?
 - A. In the science museum.
- B. At the school library.

C. In the zoo.

- D. In the park.
- () 2. Which object is not mentioned in the conversation?
 - A. Light bulb.
- B. Airplane.
- C. Television.
- D. Radio.

1c Read 1a and complete the table.

Invention	Inventor	Year
light bulb		
	Guglielmo Marconi	
		1903

1d Discuss with your classmates the inventions listed in 1c. Let them guess which invention you are describing.

You may begin like this:

It is widely used by people everywhere. It was invented in 1879 by Thomas Edison. It's said that...



The first jeans were produced in 1855. At that time, they (not
call) jeans and they were just hard-wearing pants designed for workers. The
pants (make) of the brown cloth. This kind of cloth usually
(use) for making tents. Nowadays, their materials have been changed
so that it feels more comfortable. And many different jeans styles also
(create). They (design) not only for workers but also for
teenagers and women. Later jeans are popular all over the world.

3 Listen to the three passages. Match the pictures with the following information.

Invention	Inventor	Year
	A. Karl Benz	a. 1926
6	B. John Baird	b. 1876
ð	C. Alexander Graham Bell	c. 1885

4a Read the following words. Listen and check the vowels.

r <u>o</u> cket	c <u>o</u> tton	h <u>o</u> spital	m <u>o</u> del
/a/	/a/	/o/	/ a /
s <u>a</u> tellite	c <u>a</u> mera	l <u>a</u> ptop	pl <u>a</u> stic
/æ/	/æ/	/æ/	/æ/

4b Listen and read the following sentences aloud, paying attention to the stress and intonation. Then use the words in 4a to make up similar conversations.

A: 'When was the 'digital camera 'developed?

B: It was 'developed in the '1970s.

A: Was the 'digital camera 'developed in 'Korea?

B: 'No.

A: 'Where was it 'developed?

B: It was 'developed in 'Japan'.



1a Read and understand.

Work in groups and discuss the questions before reading. Then read and check.

- 1. What is an invention?
- 2. List some inventions that you know and their inventors.
- 3. Do you think you can be an inventor? Why?

An invention may be a new product or a new way of doing things. Inventions come about in many ways. Most of the time, inventions happen because someone works to solve a problem. Sometimes inventions are the result of accidents. Look at your schoolbags. You have pencils, pens, crayons, rulers and some books. None of these things was planted in fields. They were made in factories and invented by someone. Inventing is interesting and exciting and everyone can be an inventor. Do you want to be an inventor? There are a few simple steps to follow in the invention process.

- ◆ _____ You can have wild and crazy thoughts. Remember that no idea is too silly. Many people laughed at the Wright brothers and said they would never fly. But they weren't discouraged by what people said. That's why now we have planes.
- ◆ ____ Careful planning is important in the invention process. This is the time to brainstorm for ideas and to evaluate them.
- ♦ _____ Make a detailed drawing of your invention so others will understand how your invention works.
- ◆ Make a model of your invention.
- _____ See if your invention works as it is planned. If not, do more research, redesign it, and test it again.
- ◆ _____ Every invention needs a name.
- ◆ Share your inventions with others.



- 1b Read 1a and put the sentences in the correct places.
 - A. Draw your invention. B. Name your invention. C. Test your invention.
 - D. Use your imagination. E. Plan and design your invention.
- 1c Read 1a again and fill in the blanks.

When you want to have an invention, first you must use your Then
you should plan and design it. Careful planning is very in the invention.
Third, you should make a drawing of your invention and make a model of
it. If you want to make your invention more successful, you must it again
and again. After that, you your invention. Last, remember that you should
your invention with others.

2 Discuss with your partner which of the following are the top 3 most important inventions and which is the least important invention. Then explain your choice to the class.

candy computer medicine balloon gun robot lock scissors spaceship zero

chopsticks light bulb keyboard television X-ray machine

Example:

I think zero is the most important invention. It is said that it was invented by an Indian. It is a very interesting number. For example, I have only ten *yuan*. If you add five zeros after it for me, haha, I will be a rich man.

- 3 Do you know how to be an inventor? Do you want to invent something? Write a passage about your invention. The following questions may help you.
 - 1. How did you come up with the idea of your invention?
 - 2. What does it look like?
 - 3. What is it made of/from?
 - 4. What's it used for?
 - 5. What are you going to name it?

Before writing, think more clearly and tell about the looks, uses, advantages and disadvantages of an object.



Read through Sections A-C and pay attention to the underlined parts.

Grammar

Passive Voice (II)

The radio was invented by Guglielmo Marconi in 1895.		
When was the digital camera developed? It was developed in the 1970s.		
Where was it developed?	It was developed in Japan.	
What <u>is</u> a rocket <u>used</u> for? It <u>is used</u> for sending satellites		
	or spaceships into space.	

Functions

I wish I could go into space some day.

I hope your dream will come true.

It's said that he invented more than two thousand things during his life.

Inventing is interesting and exciting and everyone can be an inventor.

How well do you know Sections A-C? Now do the following tasks and check.

Read the passage and discuss the questions on Page 88.

Where Are We?

Where are we? That was a big question when we first explored our world long ago. The early explorers found that the stars in the sky were good guiding marks.

Using the stars, they could find out where they were and in which direction they were going. This method worked well at night as long as the weather was good and the stars could be seen. But it didn't work so well during the rest of the time. That was a problem.



Today, the problem has been solved by the Global Positioning System(GPS). It is like a man-made star. We can use it at any time, in any place and in any weather to find out our position. It can also be used to study the shape of the earth. The GPS is a great invention that helps us explore our planet and discover where we are.

- 1. How did the early explorers know where they were?
- 2. What's the disadvantage of using the stars as guiding marks?
- 3. What is a GPS? Is it useful to us?
- 4. What do you think the GPS will be used for in the future?

Project

Describing Your Invention

1. This is Kangkang's invention. Look at the information and the picture. What do you think of it? Discuss with your partners.

Name: Plar (Plane-car)
Inventor: Kangkang
Year: 2014
Use: Both flying and driving



2. Design your own invention. Draw a picture of it and write down the information about it.

Name:
Inventor:
Year:
Use:



- 3. Show the picture of your invention and describe it to the class.
- 4. Discuss in groups to decide which is the most useful/interesting/funny invention.

TOPIC 2 I'm excited about the things that will be discovered in the future.



1a Listen, look and say.

Kangkang: Hi, Maria! A wonderful movie will be shown tonight. Shall we go to

watch it?

Maria: Great! What's it about?

Kangkang: It's about life in space.

Maria: That sounds exciting.

Kangkang: Yes. All the people travel by spaceship in the

movie, and they can visit planets like Mars.

Maria: Really? Kangkang, do you think people will live on Mars in the

future?

Kangkang: Yes. I think we will live in space one day. Houses, schools and

hospitals will be built on Mars. We will be able to do anything that

can be done on the earth.

Maria: What fun! I can't wait.

1b Listen to 1a and answer the questions. Then check the answers in pairs.

- 1. When will the movie be shown?
- 2. What's the movie about?
- 3. How do people travel in the movie?
- 4. What will be built on Mars according to Kangkang?

1c Read 1a and complete Maria's diary.

6	<u>(10</u>	Decem	nber 8th, Tue	sday			Cloudy
1		K	angkang and	I are excited, be	ecause a wor	nderful movie _	
0	0	tonight	t. The poster	says it's about _		. In the movie, a	all the people
	1	travel		_and they can v	isit		
	0	K	angkang thin	ks we will live		one day. Ho	uses, schools
	a	and ho	spitals	on Mars	s. We will be	able to do	that
		can be	done on eart	h. I think we wi	ll be able to	fly everywhere	in the future.
9	0	I hope	our dreams of	of space travel w	vill come tru	e.	



Item Year	Now	2048
Houses and hospitals	are built on the earth.	will be built on Mars.
Buses and taxis	by men (drive).	by robots.
Trees and flowers	(plant, in the soil).	(in the air).

2b Work in pairs. Look at the picture and talk about what will happen on Mars in 2048. Then complete the passage with the correct forms of the given words.

Look at the pictu	re of what will happ	en in 2048.	to the	(1)
Many tall buildings _	(build) un	der the sea.	100	
A lot of animals	(keep) in the	water. Now	1	
books (pr	int) on the paper. E	But in 2048		
books (disj	play) on soft screens.	Schoolbags		
and pens	(use) at schools	now. But,	H	
computers	(use) by teachers a	nd students	4	
in the future. Many s	paceships	_(send) into		
space. Some scientists	believe that aliens _	(find	l) in oute	r space.

- 3 A. Listen to the conversation and answer the following questions.
 - 1. Does Kangkang believe there are aliens? What about Maria?
 - 2. What does the American scientist think about aliens?

B. Listen again and fill in the b	lanks.
-----------------------------------	--------

(Maria and Kangkang are talking after watching

the movie.)

Maria: Do you believe there are aliens?

Kangkang: I'm _____.

Maria: But some scientists think there are aliens. One American scientist

thinks they have already______, and they are reading information

If you can't follow a certain

point in listening, just write

down the key words.

in order to learn about human culture.

Kangkang: Aliens are described and discussed by many people. But I don't

think aliens _____ in space.

Maria: You're probably right. I won't believe there are aliens until I see them



1a Look, listen and say.

Kangkang: Maria, have you heard the news on TV about the space flight to Mars?

Maria: No, I haven't. Who will take part in the space flight?

Kangkang: Astronauts from China, the United States and Russia. They will travel

into space and discover something new about Mars. I really admire

them. I'd like to be an astronaut

when I grow up.

Maria: It's really cool. However, I

think you should first master

some basic computer skills.

Kangkang: Sure. Maria, what are you

going to be?

Maria: Mm, I am not sure. Sometimes

I want to be a dancer, but I think I'm going to be a scientist in the

future.

Kangkang: Why? I think you dance very well.

Maria: Yes, I'm sure I can perform ballet on the stage in the future. But I

prefer science to dance. It is my favorite subject in school. I'm excited

about the things that will be discovered in the future.

Kangkang: That's wonderful! Let's work hard. Then our dreams will be realized.

1b	listen to 1a and mark T (True) or F (False).
----	--

1. Astronauts from Chi	na, the United States and Russia will tal	ke part in the
space flight.		()

- 2. Kangkang wants to be a scientist in the future. ()
- 3. Kangkang thinks Maria can dance very well. ()
- 4. Maria prefers dance to science. ()

1c Read 1a and complete the sentences.

1. Something new about Mars	by	the astronauts.
-----------------------------	----	-----------------

- 2. Some basic computer skills ______ by Kangkang.
- 3. I'm excited about the things _____ in the future.
- 4. Their dreams ______ if they work hard.



- 2 Listen to the passage and choose the correct answers.
 - 1. How many shapes of UFOs were mentioned?

A. Four.

B. Five.

C. Six.

2. In which area of China did the UFOs often appear?

A. Nanjing.

B. South China.

- C. The north of Changjiang River.
- 3. Why do people know little about UFOs?
 - A. UFOs have been met by so many people.
 - B. There are various shapes of UFOs.
 - C. A UFO is only met by chance and disappears rapidly.
- Read the questions to predict what the passage talks about.

3a Look at the pictures and complete the sentences by following the example.

Then read the dialogs aloud and pay attention to the stress and intonation.



Example:

A: 'How is the 'cake, 'Jane?

B: 'Just a 'minute. It will be 'finished 'very 'soon.

A: The 'article 'says the 'houses _____ under the 'sea in the near 'future.

B: It's really 'cool to 'live under the 'sea.





A: Can you 'believe it? Our 'car _____ by 'robots in the 'future?

B: It 'sounds 'great.

A: Have you 'heard the 'news on 'TV? More 'planets _____ in the 'universe.

B: 'No, I haven't. I think 'most of our 'dreams in the 'future'.



3b Make up your own dialogs about the future with the structure underlined in 3a.





1a Read and understand.

Look at the pictures and predict which statements are true about Mars. Then read the passage quickly and check the answers.

- 1. Mars looks like a red ball.
- 2. The temperature on Mars is very high.
- 3. Mars is much larger than the earth.
- 4. Mars is too far away for us to reach.

What do you know about Mars? What does it look like?

Mars is the fourth planet from the sun in our solar system and is named after Mars, the Roman god of war. Its diameter is 53% as wide as that of the earth. Mars goes around the sun at a distance of about 228 million kilometers. You can tell which planet is Mars because it is bright red in



the night sky. It looks like a red and orange ball. It's very beautiful. But during spring and summer, the surface of Mars is covered by strong storms. The gravity



on the surface of Mars is about two-fifths as strong as it is on earth. So a person who weighs 90 kilos on earth weighs only 36 kilos on Mars. The temperature on Mars is between -138°C and 28°C. The air has only 0.13% oxygen.

It takes a spaceship about eight months to reach Mars from the earth when the two planets are closest to each other. Scientists

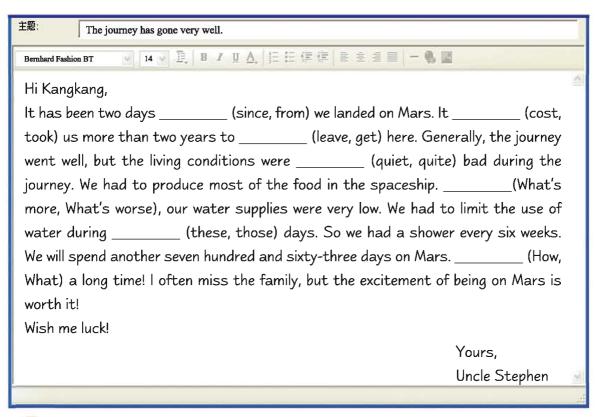
are still searching for more information about Mars.

1b Read 1a again and write down the information about Mars.

Diameter	Color	Shape
Climate	Gravity	Distance from the sun



- 1c Discuss the crazy questions with your partner and state your reasons.
 - 1. Does Mars have a good climate for plants?
 - 2. Is Mars a useful place to dry fruit?
 - 3. Is Mars a good place for human beings to live?
 - 4. Is Mars a comfortable place for heavy people?
- 2 Kangkang's uncle sent an e-mail to him from Mars. Choose the right words to complete the letter.



- 3a Write back an e-mail to Uncle Stephen for Kangkang and ask him for more information about Mars. The list may help you.
 - clothing
- · food and drinks
- weather
- transportation
- **3b** Work in pairs. Check your partner's e-mail and use your knowledge of Mars to answer the questions for Uncle Stephen.



Read through Sections A-C and understand the underlined parts.

Grammar

Passive Voice (III)

A wonderful movie will be shown tonight.

I'm excited about the things that will be discovered in the future.

Functions

We will be able to do anything that can be done on the earth.

I think you should first master some basic computer skills.

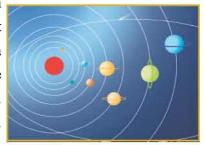
Let's work hard. Then our dreams will be realized.

How well do you know Sections A-C? Now do the following tasks and check.

1a Read the passage and choose a proper title.

- 1. Is There Life Out There?
- 2. Our Planet
- 3. The Stars at Night

Scientists think that there has been life on earth for millions of years. However, we haven't found life on other planets yet. The earth is a planet and it goes around the sun. And there are seven other planets that also go around the sun. The sun and its planets are called the solar system. The solar system is a small part of the universe.

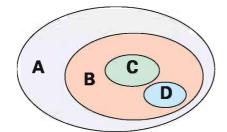


Scientists have launched many spaceships to explore other planets in the solar system. Some spaceships have gone beyond the solar system. However, no one has discovered any life in space yet.

Why has no one from other planets sent us a message? Have they tried to send information to us? With so many stars in space, are we alone, or is there life on other planets in space?



1b Match the letters in the picture with their names according to 1a.



) 1. the solar system

() 2. the earth

00000000000000

() 3. the universe

() 4. the sun

- 2 A spaceship will be sent out to find aliens in outer space. A letter will be put on the spaceship to introduce our earth. Discuss in groups and write a short introduction of the earth. Then present it to the class.
- 3 If aliens are found in the near future, what changes will happen to people on the earth? Discuss in groups and make a list of all the possibilities.

Example:

More aliens will be found with the help of our new friends.

Students will be sent to their planet to learn their language.

. . .

Project

Reporting on the Celestial Body You Like to Live on

1. Divide the class into three groups: Mars, the moon, the earth.





Mars

Moon

Earth

- 2. Discuss the life there, such as clothing, food and drink, transportation ...
- 3. Choose one student in each group to introduce the information to the class.
- 4. Think about which celestial body you would like to live on and give a report to the class.

TOPIC 3 China is the third nation that sent a person into space.



1a Listen, look and say.

(Michael and Kangkang are in the Science Museum.)

Michael: Kangkang, who is the first Chinese to travel into space?

Kangkang: Yang Liwei. He is our national hero who traveled around the earth in $Shenzhou\ V$ for 21 hours in 2003. China is the third nation that sent a person into space.

Michael: Wonderful! All of you must be very proud.

Kangkang: Of course we are. What's more, we have launched another four spaceships in the past few years.

Michael: That's great! It proves that China has made great progress in its space industry.

Kangkang: That's right. I'm sure that China will send more spaceships into space.

Michael: Look, what a large crowd! Let's go and see.

Kangkang: Wow! *Chang'e I*. It's a spaceship which was launched as China's first lunar probe. I hope I can travel to the moon one day.

Michael: I think your dream will be realized in the future.



	•	
1b	Listen to 1a and tick the expressions y	ou hear.

travel into space	make great progress
aliens	lunar probe
Shenzhou V	travel to the moon
launched	space walk

- 1c Read 1a and answer the questions.
 - 1. Who is Yang Liwei?
 - 2. How long did *Shenzhou V* travel around the earth?
 - 3. How many spaceships has China sent into space?
 - 4. What is *Chang'e I*?
 - 5. Do you know the legend of Chang'e? Please tell it to your partner.



- 2 Study the change of the following sentences. Then try to find the rules and fill in the blanks.
 - 1. Yang Liwei is our national hero.

He traveled around the earth in *Shenzhou V* for 21 hours in 2003.

Yang Liwei is our national hero *who/that* traveled around the earth in *Shenzhou V* for 21 hours in 2003.

2. Wang Yaping is a woman astronaut.

She gave us a lesson in *Shenzhou X* spaceship.

Wang Yaping is a woman astronaut

3. *Shenzhou X* is a spaceship.

It was launched with three astronauts in 2013.

3 Listen to the passage and fill in the blanks.

China's First Man-made Satellite Dongfanghong I					
Launch time:					
Launch place: Satellite Launch Center					
Development	Development team: many scientists under				
Significance:	 becoming the country to independently launch a satellite stepping into being a landmark of China's 				

4 Choose the correct forms of the given words to complete the passage.

Neil Alden Armstrong was born on August 5, 1930. He was an American astronaut ______ (which/who) was the first man to set foot on the moon. During his life, he took part in two space flights. On July 20, 1969, his second and last space flight was in a famous spaceship ______ (which/who) was named *Apollo 11*. Along with his partner, Buzz Aldrin, Armstrong had a spacewalk and then _____ (lands/landed) on the lunar surface. They spent 2.5 hours _____ (exploring/to explore) and collecting soil and rocks to take back to earth. On July 24th, they returned to the earth _____



_(safe/safely).



1a Look, listen and say.

(Kangkang is asking Mr. Brown something about spaceships.)

Kangkang: Spaceships are so amazing. Mr. Brown, could you please tell me some

recent spaceship developments?

Mr. Brown: OK. Spaceships which now mainly use electronic controls

used to be controlled by astronauts.

Kangkang: But how do they work?

Mr. Brown: Astronauts use computers to control the

speed and direction of their spaceships,

even the temperature.

Kangkang: Perfect! But I know so little about

computer technology.

Mr. Brown: It's important to master computer technology.

So I advise you to discover new ways to

make computers serve us better.

Kangkang: Good idea. Thanks for your introduction, Mr. Brown. I think that if I

work hard then nothing is impossible.

1b	What can computers do to spaceships? Tick the possibilition	s and	then
	listen to 1a to check your answers.	11,	

/ \	- 1	4		•	1 (4 4
í i	ı	ma	Ke.	$t \alpha \alpha \alpha$	l tor	astronauts

() 2. change the speed of spaceships

() 3. control the direction of spaceships

() 4. control the temperature of spaceships

Make predictions based on what you know.

1c Read 1a and fill in the blanks.

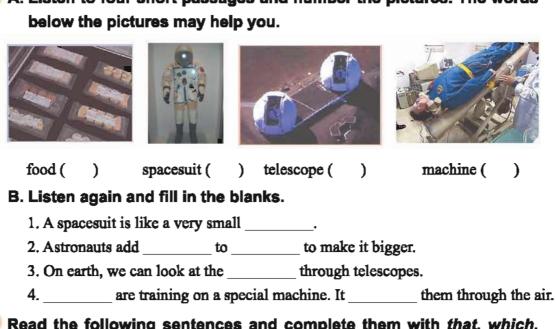
Kangkang wanted to know something about recent spaceship developments.

Mr. Brown told him that spaceships used to be ______ by astronauts and now mainly use _____ controls. Then he explained to Kangkang that the speed and _____ of spaceships as well as the temperature are controlled by computers. Kangkang then realized he knew little about computer technology. Mr. Brown

him to learn to use computers well and make computers	
us better in the future. Kangkang made up his mind to work hard to	
computer technology.	

)

A. Listen to four short passages and number the pictures. The words below the pictures may help you.



Read the following sentences and complete them with that, which, who.

1. Do you know Neil Armstrong was the first man to set foot on the moon? 2. This is the spaceship _____ the astronauts use in space. 3. In all big cities, there are things _____ tourists shouldn't miss! 4. He is a man means what he says.

Listen and read the attributive clauses, paying attention to the pause, weak form and intonation.

- 1. China is the third nation/that sent a person into space.
- 2. Yang Liwei is our national hero/who traveled around the earth in Shenzhou V for 21 hours in 2003.
- 3. Spaceships/which use electronic controls/used to be controlled by astronauts.
- 4. Chang'e I is a spaceship/which was launched as China's first lunar probe.
- 5. More and more people have personal computers/that are used to play games and watch movies.



1a Read and understand.

1. Tick the fields we use the com	puter	in.
-----------------------------------	-------	-----

education	business	industry	communication
daily life	medical care	entertainment	sports

2. Can you give an example of the use of the computer in one of the fields above?

The Importance of Computers

Since computers were invented in the USA in the 1950s, they have become very important in many areas of work and leisure. There is no doubt that computers

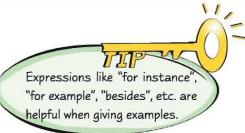
are very useful in technology and business. In space, computers have been used to control the speed and direction of a spaceship. With the help of computers, doctors can find diseases easily and solve other problems. For example, tiny computers which are inside patients'



bodies can keep their hearts beating normally. In factories, robots are controlled by computers that are like human brains. They can do work that is dangerous to humans. In business, computers are used to place and cancel orders. They are also making the workplace safer and better.

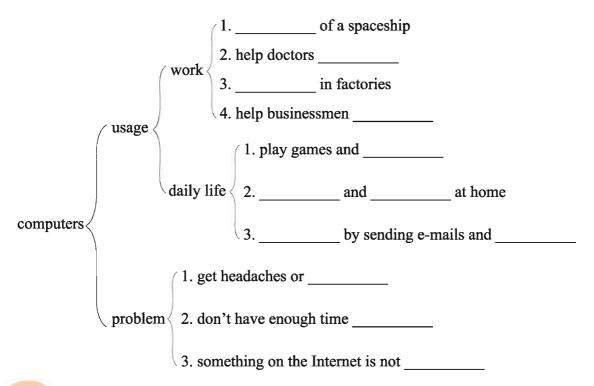
Since the Internet came into being, people's lives at home have been changed, too. More and more people have personal computers that are used to play games and watch movies. Thanks to the Internet, people can do shopping and do business at home. Instead of writing letters on paper, people communicate by sending e-mails and chatting online. The whole world is connected. The Internet is making the world smaller, like a village.

Computers have improved our lives, but they have brought problems, too. For instance, if we work on computers too long, we may get headaches or sore eyes. If we play computer games too much, we won't have enough time to study or exercise. Besides, not everything we read on the Internet is true or good for us. Computers help us at work and at home, but they must be used properly.



1b Read 1a and complete the following tasks.

- 1. Underline the topic sentence of each paragraph.
- 2. Complete the following diagram.



Write a short passage with the title One Day Without Computers. The following information may help you.

Suppose you were on a special day in 2030. During the day, there were no computers in the world. What trouble would you have? You may begin like this:

One Day Without Computers

Today, when I got up, I just turned on the computer as usual, but it didn't work. Then I tried my brother's PC, my parents', even my dog's, but none of them worked. Later, it was reported on TV that all of the computers in the world broke down today ...



Read through Sections A-C and understand the colored parts.

Grammar

Attributive Clause (I)

He is our national hero who/that traveled around the earth in *Shenzhou V* for 21 hours in 2003.

China is the third nation that sent a person into space.

More and more people have personal computers that/which are used to play games and watch movies.

Functions

All of you must be very proud.

It proves that China has made great progress in its space industry.

There is no doubt that computers are very useful in technology and business.

The Internet is making the world smaller, like a village.

Computers help us at work and at home, but they must be used properly.

How well do you know Sections A-C? Now do the following tasks and check.

1a Discuss the following questions before reading. Then read and check.

- 1. Do you like robots? Why or why not?
- 2. If you had a robot, what would you like it to do for you?

Robots—Our Servants in the Future?

What will our future be like? No one knows for certain, but most people think that robots will be part of our lives. Will they be friendly or unfriendly?

So far, robots haven't caused us any problems. They work for us like servants all the time. They help us do dangerous and difficult work.

People are surprised at the rapid development of robots. In a few years, perhaps robots will think on their own, just as people use their brains and act for themselves. However, once robots can think for themselves, problems may appear. One scientist warns that if robots start to think for themselves, they will no longer



want to be our servants, but our masters. The scientist also warns that if we are lucky, they might treat us as we now treat our pets; if we are not lucky, who knows what will happen? Perhaps there will be a war between human beings and robots.

1b	Find the words in the passage according to the following meanings.	Γhe
	first letter is given to help you.	

	1. to tell somebody about danger or about something bad that ma	y
	happen	W
	2. to make something happen or appear	c
	3. a person who is paid to do housework for a family	S
	4. sure and confident, without any doubts	c
	5. used to say that something may be true, but you are not sure	p
1c	Read 1a again and discuss the questions with your par	rtner.
	1. Do you think that robots will be part of our lives in the future?	Why?
	2. Robots are considered to be our servants, aren't they?	
	3. Do you think robots can think or act for themselves?	
	4. Why does the title have a question mark?	

Project

Making a Wall Newspaper About Computer Information

- 1. Collect the following information from books, newspapers, the Internet and so on.
 - \Rightarrow the parts of the computer
 - ☆ the kinds of computers
 - ☆ the development of the computer
- 2. Discuss the uses of computers in daily life and technology in groups.
- 3. Design a wall newspaper about the computer.



1 Listen to the joke and mark the intonation of the questions. Then practice telling the joke and pay attention to the sense group.

A Story of a French Student

A French student went to London on vacation. He thought, "I know a little English. Can people understand me?"

One morning, he went to a restaurant and sat down at the table. Soon the waitress came to him. "Can I help you, sir?" asked the waitress. "I'd like a cup of tea and..." He could not remember the English word "egg". He looked around, but nobody was eating eggs.

Then he saw a magazine on the table next to him. There was a picture of a rooster on its cover. "What's the English for this?" the student asked. "A rooster, sir." "What do you call a rooster's wife?" "A hen, sir," answered the waitress. "And what do you call a hen's children?" "Do you mean chicks, sir?" "Yes. Before chicks are born, what do you call them?" "Eggs, sir." "Very well. Bring me two eggs and a cup of tea, please."

He sat back with a smile on his face.

2 Fill in the blanks with the correct forms of the given words in the box.

	realize	dry search	silence	offer	communicate	
1) (Shhi Vaan	I The has	dmastar is a	maalsina		
-		! The hea				
2) I	le	some useful adv	ice on how	to solve	this problem.	
3) I	Be careful. Th	ne paint hasn't	yet			
4) I	He spent a lot	of time	_ for inform	nation ab	out Canada last n	iight.
5) \$	She feels upse	et because she ha	sn't	her d	ream.	
6) S	She is shy. Sh	e doesn't know l	now	with	others.	Minus Fill
3 Co	mplete the	passage with t	hat, which	or who		rus Kung fu
	Have you s	seen the film	is call	ed Kungj	fu Panda? This	
filr	n mainly tells	s us a story	happene	d in anci	ent China. One	0
of	the main cha	racters in it is a	panda	is ve	ry fat but cute.	A STATE
		few friends			i i	

7 Listen to the conversation and complete the sentence	es.
1) Kris thinks the light bulb is the invention.	
2) Anna thinks inventions make our life	
3) Anna thinks more inventions are needed to social pollution.	problems like
4) Kris wants to invent a car that doesn't produce	
5) The car named Go-Car would run on instead of ga	as.
8 Choose the correct sentences from the box to complet	e the conversation
and practice it with your partner.	
A. My pronunciation is poor.	
B. I did badly in the English exam.	
C. Thank you for your advice.	
D. Then, how do you improve your reading?	
E. First, I'm always afraid of speaking English in public.	
F. How can you improve your writing ability?	
G. Could you help me with it?	
Liles Wiles and recovery houses to done Town 2	
Lily: Why are you unhappy today, Tom?	
Tom: It's hard for me to learn English	
Lily: Yes, I'd love to. What's your problem?	
Tom:	16 Warr and a Can are 40 4h a
Lily: Don't be shy. You should be brave and believe in yourse	
English Corner to practice your oral English. Once you sa	y out loud what you learn
you won't easily forget it.	
Tom: Really? I'll try that way.	
Lily: I often read English stories and novels. They not only im	
enlarge (make something bigger) my vocabulary. Reading is	s an important way to learn
English well.	
Tom: But I'm still	
Lily: Cheer up. You can do a good job.	
Tom: OK, I'll do as you said and never give up.	



There are many words in the English language that have been borrowed from the French language. Some of the words are so common in English that people think they are English words. These words are used in English around the world, not just in Canada where English and French are used side by



side. An example of this sort of word is "fiancé" (/ˌfiɪɑɪnˈseɪ/). It means the man that a woman has agreed to marry. Another example is the word, "bouquet" (/bʊˈkeɪ/). It means a bunch of cut flowers. The English language has become more interesting because it has borrowed some French words.

- 1) Are there many words in English borrowed from French?
- 2) What's the Chinese meaning of "fiancé"?
- 3) What is the English meaning of the word "bouquet"?
- 4) What other English words are borrowed from other languages?

10 Written work.

A. Work in groups and describe the following pictures to your group members.









В.	Write a passage with the title The Advantages of Knowing a Foreign Language.
_	
_	
_	
_	



Appendices 附录

Notes to the Texts 课文注释

Unit 1 The Changing World

Topic 1 Our country has developed rapidly.

Section A

- 1. Where have you been, Jane? 你去了哪里,简?
 - I have been to Mount Huang with my parents. 我和我的父母去了黄山。have/has been to... 意为"(某人)曾经到过……"。如: She has been to Beijing. 她曾经去过北京。
- 2. She has gone to Cuba to be a volunteer ... 她去古巴当志愿者了…… have/has gone to... 表示"(某人)已经去……了,现在不在这里(说话的地点)"。如:
 - Where is your brother? 你哥哥去哪儿了?
 - He has gone to the supermarket. 他去超市了。(他现在不在这里。)

Section B

1. You took part in some volunteer activities during summer holidays, didn't you? 你在暑假参加了一些志愿者活动,是吗?

此句为反意疑问句。反意疑问句即附加疑问句,由两部分构成:前一部分是对事物的陈述,后一部分是简略的问句。前者用肯定形式,后者一般用否定形式;反之亦然。如:

It's a nice day, isn't it? 今天天气不错,不是吗?

Ann didn't use to live there, did she? 安过去不曾住在那儿,对吗?

2. Though I had no time to travel, I still felt very happy. 虽然我没有时间去旅行,但我仍然感到很开心。

连词 though/although 和 even though/even if 意为"虽然,尽管,即使",引导让步状语从句,通常不与 but 连用。如:

Though/Although my daughter is only ten years old, she knows a lot. 虽然我的女儿只有十岁,但她懂得很多事情。

Even though/Even if the work was hard, they enjoyed themselves. 尽管这工作很辛苦,他们还是自得其乐。

even if 和 even though 带有强调的意味,语气较强;though 和 although 语气较弱,而 though 比 although 更口语化,不如 although 正式。

Section C

People kept in touch with their friends and relatives far away mainly by letter or telegram. 人们主要通过信件或电报与远方的亲戚朋友保持联系。

keep in touch with... 与……保持联系

get in touch with... 与……取得联系

lose touch with... 与……失去联系 如:

You can get in touch with me at any time if necessary. 如果有必要,你可以随时与我取得联系。 I've lost touch with most of my friends in college. 我已经和大学时的大多数朋友失去了联系。



Section D

1. Leisure activities are the kinds of things people like to do to relax and enjoy themselves when they are not working or going to school. 休闲活动是人们不上班或不上学的时候用以放松和自娱的活动。

people like to do to relax and enjoy themselves 是定语从句,修饰 things。

2. Many people stay at home having a rest, reading books and watching TV. 很多人待在家里休息、看书和看电视。

having a rest, reading books and watching TV 是现在分词短语作伴随状语。

Topic 2 The population in developing countries is growing faster. *Section A*

- I really hate going to a place like that. 我真的讨厌去那种地方。
- So do I. 我也是。

So do I.是倒装句,表示前面提到的肯定情况也同样适合另外一个人或物,结构为"so+be/情态动词/助动词+主语"。如:

- They can swim well. 他们游泳很棒。
- So can we. 我们也游得很好。

如果表示上文提到的否定情况也同样适合另外一个人或物,则用"neither/nor+be/情态动词/助动词+主语"。如:

- I don't like the weather here. 我不喜欢这儿的天气。
- Neither/Nor does she. 她也不喜欢。

Section B

1. What a large population! 人口真多啊!

population 是名词,可以用 large/big/small 等形容词修饰; population 作主语时,谓语动词常用单数形式;针对人口数量提问时,特殊疑问词用 what。如:

The population of China is very large. 中国人口众多。

- 一What's the population of China? 中国有多少人口?
- —China has a population of 1.37 billion. 中国有十三亿七千万人口。
- 2. And it is increasing by 90 million every year. 它(世界人口)在以每年九千万的幅度增长。increase by 意为"增加了,增长了"。如:

The price of oil increased by 2%. 石油的价格增长了 2%。

- 3. So it is. 的确是这样。
- so+主语+be/助动词/情态动词,表示对上文情况的肯定和同意,意为"确实如此"。如:
- —John studies very hard. 约翰学习十分刻苦。
- —So he does. 他确实很刻苦。
- —Jane can speak English. 简会说英语。
- —So she can. 她确实会。

Section C

1. ...about one fifth of the people in the world live in China. ……世界上大约五分之一的人生活在中国。

one fifth 是分数。英文分数表达方法:分子用基数词,分母用序数词,先读分子后读分母;当分子大于1时,分母的序数词用复数形式,直接在词尾加"s"。如:

 $\frac{1}{3}$ one third $\frac{2}{5}$ two fifths $\frac{1}{2}$ a/one half



 $3\frac{1}{2}$ three and a/one half $\frac{1}{4}$ one fourth/a quarter

 $\frac{3}{4}$ three fourths/three quarters

2. One was known as the one-child policy. 其中一项措施是独生子女政策。

be known as... 为固定短语,意为"已知的,知名的"。如:

The village is known as Garden Mill. 该村就是为人熟知的米尔花园。

Section D

1. I live in a small mountain town called Fairmont. 我住在一个叫菲尔蒙特的小山城。called Fairmont 是过去分词短语作定语,修饰 town。

2.The small town is surrounded by trees. 小城四周绿树环绕。

be surrounded by 意为"被……所环绕"。如:

The city is surrounded by mountains. 那座城市四面环山。

Topic 3 The world has changed for the better.

Section A

- 1. You have been in New York for a long time. 你在纽约已很长时间了。
- (1) have/has been in... 表示到目前为止状态的持续。如:

He has been in this company for three years. 他已经在这家公司三年了。

(2) for 和表示一段时间的词组连用时, 句中谓语动词通常使用延续性动词(否定式除外)。如:

I have been here for a few days.我已经到这儿几天了。

2. ... but the city has improved a lot since I came here a few years ago. ……但是自从我几年前来到这里,这个城市已经有了很大的发展。

since 意为"从……以后,自……以来",所引导的从句一般要用非延续性动词,主句用完成时态。如:

She has been working since she finished school. 她从学校毕业以后一直在工作。

since 作介词时,后面要接时间点,不接时间段。如:

We've lived here since 1990. 自 1990 年以来我们一直住在这里。

3. As a matter of fact, it's a wonderful place to live. 实际上,这是个居住的好地方。

动词不定式 to live 在此作 place 的定语。动词不定式作定语时,它与所修饰的词之间往往有动宾关系,如果该不定式是不及物动词,或者其本身有宾语,后面应有必要的介词。如:

I have no friends to talk with. 我没有可以交谈的朋友。

但当动词不定式所修饰的名词是 place 时,不定式后面通常没有介词。如:

Two days after I arrived in New York, I found a place to live.到达纽约两天后,我找到了住的地方。

文化背景知识

百老汇(Broadway)

百老汇,原意为"宽阔的街",是纽约市重要的南北向街道,南起巴特里公园(Battery Park),由南向北纵贯曼哈顿岛。百老汇两旁分布着为数众多的剧院,是美国戏剧和音乐剧的重要发源地。

Section B

...once they find people in need, they decide on suitable ways to offer them help. ······他们一旦发现有人身处困境,就选定适当的方式来帮助他们。

- (1) once 在本句中是连词,引导时间状语从句,意为"一旦……就……"。
- (2) in need 意为"在困难时;在贫困之中"。如:

We are collecting money for children in need. 我们正在为贫困儿童募捐。



Section C

- 1. While most people around the world value their homes, there are many people in every country who are homeless. 尽管世界上大多数人都珍视他们的家,但是每个国家却总有很多无家可归的人。此句中 who are homeless 是定语从句,修饰 people。
- 2. We must think of the homeless as people, not just as problems. 我们必须关心无家可归的人, 而不是仅仅把无家可归视为(社会)问题。

think of...as... 意为"把······视为······;把······看成是······"。如:

I think of this place as my home. 我把这个地方当成了家。

Section D

By 2012, Project Hope had raised 8.73 billion yuan. 到 2012 年,希望工程筹集的资金已有 87.3 亿元。

此句用的是过去完成时。过去完成时由"had+动词的过去分词"构成,表示在过去某个动作或某个具体时间之前已经发生、完成的动作或情况。

文化背景知识

世界卫生组织

(World Health Organization)

世界卫生组织(英文缩写 WHO)是联合国属下的专门机构,国际最大的公共卫生组织,总部设于瑞士日内瓦。世界卫生组织的宗旨是使全世界人民获得尽可能高水平的健康。该组织给健康下的定义为"身体、精神及社会生活中的完美状态"。其主要职能包括:促进流行病和地方病的防治:提供和改进公共卫生,疾病医疗和有关事项的教学与训练;推动确定生物制品的国际标准。

中国儿童少年基金会

(China Children and Teenagers' Fund)

中国儿童少年基金会是经中共中央书记处第100次会议通过,于1981年7月28日正式成立的中国第一家基金会。作为中国公益基金会的先驱,中国儿童少年基金会自成立以来,恪守为儿童少年教育福利事业竭诚服务的宗旨,紧紧围绕儿童的真实需求,不断创新募捐救助理念、探索公益项目运作长效机制,充分发挥公益组织在社会保障体系中的重要补充作用。该基金会以女童为救助对象的"春蕾计划"和以儿童安全健康为资助重点的"安康计划"为探索慈善事业运作模式,丰富慈善事业的发展理论,推进我国慈善事业的蓬勃发展起到了非常重要的作用。

红十字国际委员会

(International Committee of the Red Cross)

红十字国际委员会是总部设于瑞士日内瓦的人道主义机构。根据日内瓦公约的有关规定,红十字国际委员会以中立团体身份对战争受难者进行保护和救济,并为上述原因而失散的人查人转信;受理有关违反人道主义公约的申诉;致力于发展和传播人道主义法律,与各国红十字会、红新月会、武装部队和医疗部门合作培训医务人员。历次的日内瓦公约和附加议定书,都是由红十字国际委员会起草的,它对改进、发展、完善和传播日内瓦公约等起到了重要作用;世界上新成立红十字会或经过改组的红十字会须经红十字国际委员会正式承认,方能加入国际红十字组织。迄今为止,连同1901年红十字会的创始者亨利·杜南荣获的第一个诺贝尔和平奖,红十字国际委员会已四次获得诺贝尔和平奖。

中国青年志愿者协会

(Chinese Young Volunteers Association)

中国青年志愿者协会成立于1994年12月5日,是中国共产主义青年团团中央指导下的,由志愿从事社会公益事业与社会保障事业的各界青年组成的全国性社会团体。协会旨在通过组织和指导全国青年志愿服务活动,为社会提供志愿服务,推动社会主义精神文明建设,促进社会主义市场经济体制的建立和完善,提高青年的整体素质,为经济社会的协调发展和全面进步作出贡献。



Unit 2 Saving the Earth

Section B Topic 1 Pollution has caused too many problems.

- —How long have you been like this? 你像这样多久了?
- —I've been like this since last week. 自上周以来我一直都是这样。

how long 意为"多久,多长时间",用来询问或谈论某段时间,答语通常用 for, since 等引导的时间状语,谓语动词必须为延续性动词。如:

- How long have you learned English? 你学英语多长时间了?
- I have learned English for three years. 我学英语三年了。

文化背景知识

光污染(Light Pollution)

光污染一般分为白亮污染、人工白昼和彩光污染。它主要包括城市建筑的玻璃幕墙、磨光大理石等反射的强烈日光;汽车夜间行驶时的照明灯和某些工作场所内过多,过分复杂的信号灯;夜幕下的广告灯、霓虹灯,以及舞厅、夜总会里的黑光灯、荧光灯等。光污染会导致眼睛灼伤、神经紊乱、身体组织癌变等。光污染不仅有损人的生理机能,而且影响人的心理健康。光污染还会伤害鸟类和昆虫,强光可能破坏昆虫在夜间的正常繁殖过程。

Section C

1. However, not all people know noise is also a kind of pollution and is harmful to humans' health. 然而,并非所有的人都知道噪音也是一种污染,而且也会对人类健康造成危害。

not all... 表示部分否定,意为"不是所有的都······"。not 与 both, all, every 以及 every 的派生 词连用时表示部分否定。如:

Not everybody likes watching TV. 并非人人都爱看电视。

neither, none, nothing, nobody, no one 等表示全部否定。如:

Neither of the students likes reading. 这两个学生都不喜欢读书。

I think nothing is difficult for me. 我认为对我来说一切都不难。

2. Recently, it was reported that many teenagers in America can hear no better than 65-year-old people do, because these young people always listen to loud pop music. 据报道,近来许多美国青少年的听力几乎和 65 岁老人的听力一样差,这是因为这些年轻人总听劲爆的流行音乐。

no better than 意为"同……(几乎)一样;和……(几乎)一样坏"。如:

The path is no better than a sheep track. 那条路简直就是一条羊肠小道。

3. What has been done to solve these problems? 为解决这些问题采取了什么措施? has been done 是现在完成时的被动语态形式。

Section D

1. In the fields, farmers use too many chemicals which destroy the soil. 在地里,农民使用了太多对土壤起破坏作用的化肥和农药。

chemical 作名词时,意为"化学品",在此指"化肥和农药"。

which destroy the soil 是定语从句,修饰 chemicals。

2. Let's be greener people. 让我们成为更环保的人吧。green 意为"绿色的;草绿色的"。在此句中的意思是"环保的;赞成环保的"。

Topic 2 All these problems are very serious.

Section A

And a lot of water can be saved by forests. 森林可以贮存大量的水分。

(1) save 意为"贮存,保留,保存"。如:



We'll eat some now and save some for tomorrow. 我们现在吃一些并给明天留一些。

(2) can be saved 是含有情态动词的被动语态。

文化背景知识

绿色长城(the Green Great Wall)

绿色长城即三北防护林工程,始建于1978年,是中国政府为改善生态环境建设的大型人工林业生态工程。该工程跨东北西部、华北北部和西北大部分地区,包括我国北方13个省(自治区、直辖市),东西长4480千米,南北宽560至1460千米,总面积4069000平方千米。在国际上被誉为"中国的绿色长城"。

沙暴(Sandstorm)

沙暴(sandstorm)指大风把大量沙粒吹入近地层所形成的挟沙风暴;尘暴(duststorm)则是大风把大量尘埃及其他细粒物质卷入高空所形成的风暴。沙尘暴(sand duststorm)是沙暴和尘暴两者兼有的总称,是指强风把地面大量沙尘物质吹起并卷入空中,使空气特别浑浊,水平能见度小于一千米的严重风沙天气现象。

Section B

1. Everyone should care for wild animals and plant more trees. 每个人都应该关爱野生动物,并且多种树。

everyone 是不定代词,意为"每个人,人人,大家",后不能接 of 短语。

every one 中的 every 是形容词,修饰 one,作定语,意为"每个",后面常接 of 短语,表示范围,意为"其中之一"。如:

Everyone loves him. 人人都喜欢他。

Every one of you must go to school. 你们每个人都必须上学。

- 2. We should do everything we can to protect the environment.我们应该尽一切努力保护环境。
- (1) everything 是不定代词, 意为"每件事物, 一切", 不特指哪一个事物。everything 作主语时, 谓语用单数。如:

Everything goes well. 一切安好。/一切顺利。

- (2)修饰 everything 的定语从句 we can 后省略了谓语动词 do。
- 3. ... who breaks the rules will be punished.破坏规则的……将会受到惩罚。 will be punished 是一般将来时的被动语态形式。

Section C

Some things we have done are very good for the earth while others are bad. 我们做的一些事情对地球有益,而另一些是有害的。

while 表示对比, 意思是"然而"。如:

He likes sports while I like collecting stamps. 他喜欢运动而我则爱好集邮。

文化背景知识

臭氧层(Ozone Layer)

臭氧层是平流层中臭氧浓度相对较高的部分,距地面约 20-25 千米。太阳射向地球的紫外线大部分被臭氧层吸收,因此臭氧层是地球不可缺少的保护层。但是,由于人们大量使用的氟利昂制剂散逸到大气层中,破坏了臭氧层。目前,南极地区臭氧层已经出现了一个大洞。

温室效应(the Greenhouse Effect)

温室效应,又称"花房效应",是大气保温效应的俗称。大气能使太阳短波辐射到达地面,但地表向外放出的长波热辐射线却被大气吸收,这样就使地表与低层大气温度增高,因其作用类似于栽培农作物的温室,故名温室效应。温室效应主要是由于现代化工业社会过多燃烧煤炭、石油和天然气,这些燃料燃烧后放出大量的二氧化碳气体进入大气造成的。自工业革命以来,人类向大气中排入的二氧化碳等吸热性强的温室气体逐年增加,大气的温室效应也随之增强,并导致产生全球气候变暖等一系列严重问题,引起了世界各国的关注。



Topic 3 What can we do at home to protect the environment? Section A

Well, my main job is to help spread the message about protecting the environment. For example, the three R's — reduce, reuse and recycle — are important. 嗯,我的主要工作是帮助宣传一些环保方面的知识。例如,"三 R"——减少使用、再次使用和回收再利用——是十分重要的。

Section C

Electric vehicles were developed in the 1990s. On April 11, 2010, a new kind of electric vehicle named "Yezi"was shown in 2010 Shanghai World Expo. 电动车是在 20 世纪 90 年代研制出来的。2010 年 4 月 11 日,一种新型的电动车"叶子"在上海世博会上展出。

were developed 和 was shown 都是一般过去时的被动语态形式。

文化背景知识

酸雨(Acid Rain)

酸雨正式的名称是酸性沉降,它可分为"湿沉降"与"干沉降"两大类,前者指的是所有气状污染物或粒状污染物随着雨、雪、雾或雹等降水型态而落到地面,后者则是指在不下雨的日子,从空中降下来的落尘所带来的酸性物质。它损害健康、污染水域、影响树木的生长、破坏土壤、危害农作物并且破坏城市建筑。

沼气(Biogas)

沼气是人畜粪便、秸秆、污水等各种有机物质在密闭的沼气池内,在厌氧(即没有氧气)条件下发酵,产生的一种可燃烧气体。由于这种气体最先是在沼泽中发现的,所以被称为沼气。

叶子(Yezi)

"叶子"是在中国 2010 年上海世博会展示的一款概念车,以电能为主要动力来源。车顶的大叶子是一部奇妙的光电转化器,它通过模拟自然界中叶片的光合作用,把太阳能转化为电能。而叶子的四个车轮就是四个风力发电机,通过捕捉散逸的风能,将风能转变成电能。叶子更能将排放的高浓度二氧化碳通过激光发生器转化为电能为车内照明,或转化为车内空调制冷剂,从而实现汽车负排放,起到了改善自然环境,缓解温室效应的效果。叶子通过转换利用每一份自然能源,将自己融入自然循环中,表达了一种车与自然合为一体的美好理念。

磁悬浮列车(Maglev Train)

磁悬浮列车是当今世界上最快的地面客运交通工具,它利用磁极的排斥力和吸引力将列车悬浮于空中并进行导向,实现列车与地面轨道间的无机械接触,再利用线性电机驱动列车运行。磁悬浮列车的最高速度可以达每小时500千米以上,比轮轨高速列车的300多千米还要快。在时速200千米时,乘客几乎听不到声响。

Unit 3 English Around the World

Topic 1 English is widely spoken throughout the world.

Section A

You can stick it on the wall. 你可以把它贴在墙上。 stick 作名词时,意为"枝条;棍"。而在此句中作动词,意为"粘贴,粘住"。如: He stuck a map of the world on the wall. 他把一张世界地图贴到墙上。

Section B

1. I don't think I will have any long conversations in Spanish. 我想我不会用西班牙语进行长谈的。



如果主句谓语动词是 think, consider, suppose, believe, expect, guess, imagine, feel, seem 等, 其后的宾语从句若含有否定意义,一般要把否定词移到主句谓语中,从句谓语用肯定式。如:

I don't believe he treated the child like that. 我相信他不会那样对待那孩子的。

2. Will the interpreter explain to you the culture of the country? 翻译会给你解释这个国家的文化吗?

explain to... 意为"向……解释/说明"。如:

He explained the system to me. 他向我介绍了这个系统。

文化背景知识

官方语言(Official Language)

官方语言是一个国家通用的正式语言或认定的正式语言。它是为适应管理国家事务的需要, 在国家机关、正式文件、法律裁决及国际交往等官方场合中规定一种或几种语言为有效语言的现 象。官方语言也是一个国家公民与其政府机关通讯时使用的语言。

Section D

... and the study of English is regarded as a very important industry in China as well as in the rest of the world. ·····无论在中国还是在世界上其他国家,英语学习都被当作一个非常重要的行业。

regard...as... 意为"将……视为……;把……看作……"。如:

Don't regard him as a fool. 别把他当作傻瓜。

Topic 2 Some things usually have different meanings in different cultures.

Section C

- 1. a homeless dog 丧家犬
 - a mad dog 疯狗
 - a running dog 走狗
 - a dog catching a mouse 狗拿耗子多管闲事
- 2. The ancient emperors compared themselves to dragons. 古代的皇帝把他们自己比作龙。compare...to... 意为"把······比作······"。如:

He compared the girl to the moon in the poem. 他在诗中把那姑娘比作月亮。

compare...with... 意为"把·····和·····作比较"。如:

If you compare her work with his, you'll find hers is much better. 如果把他俩的工作比较一下,你就会发现她的好很多。

Section D

- 1. tofu 读作/'təufuː/意为"豆腐",根据汉语拼音转变而成,在英语中有些词就是这样得来的。如:"磕头"在英语中为 kowtow /ˌkau'tau/。
- 2. In America an elevator starts on the first floor, but in Britain it starts on the ground floor. 在美国,电梯从"first floor(一楼)"开始。在英国,电梯从"ground floor(一楼)"开始。

美式英语中, first floor 指一楼, second floor 指二楼。

英式英语中, ground floor 指一楼, first floor 指二楼。

Topic 3 Could you give us some advice on how to learn English well? *Section A*

1. Could you make yourself understood in the USA? 在美国,别人能听懂你说的话吗? 短语 make oneself done 的基本意思是"使自己被……"。如:make oneself understood 指使自己被(别人)理解,即把自己的意思说清楚;make oneself heard 指使自己被听到,即使别人听见自己说



的话。

Can you make yourself understood at the English Corner? 在英语角别人能听懂你的话吗?

2. ...but I dare not speak English in public. …… 但我不敢当众讲英语。

dare 在这里是情态动词,意为"敢于",与 need 的用法一样,既可用作情态动词,亦可用作实义动词。用作情态动词时,它只有一种形式,后跟动词原形,主要用于否定句和疑问句。用作实义动词时,它有动词的全部形式,可用于一切句式。如:

She doesn't dare to say anything. 她什么都不敢说。(实义动词)

How dare you speak to me like that! 你怎么敢那样对我说话! (情态动词)

3. At times I feel like giving up. 有时我想要放弃。

feel like (doing) sth. 意为"想要(做)某事"。如:

He didn't feel like going to work.他不想去上班。

Do you feel like another drink? 你想再喝一杯吗?

Section B

1. ... I was also weak in English. ……我的英语也不好。

be weak in 意为"不善于,不擅长",相当于 be poor in。其反义词组为 do well in/be good at。如:

I'm weak in the science subjects. = I'm not good at the science subjects. 我的理科不好。

2. Think about your answer, take a deep breath and smile... 思考你的答案,深呼吸并且面带微笑……

take a deep breath 意为"深呼吸"。如:

Take a deep breath, and then you will feel relaxed. 深呼吸,那样你会觉得轻松。

Section C

1. It's an honor to talk with all of you here. 能与在座的各位交谈是我的荣幸。

It's an honor to do... 意为"做……感到很荣幸"。如:

It is a great honor to be invited here today. 今天承蒙邀请到此,深感荣幸。

- 2. I'm sure that you will make great progress as long as you stick to them.我相信只要你们坚持下去就会取得很大进步。
 - (1) as long as 意为"只要",引导条件状语从句。如:

We'll go as long as the weather is fine. 只要天气好我们就去。

(2) stick to 意为"坚持",后接名词、代词或动名词。如:

He promised to help us and he stuck to his word. 他答应过帮助我们,他没有失信。

She has stuck to reading aloud in the morning all these years. 这些年她一直坚持晨读。

Section D

Then have paper and a pen ready as you may want to write down useful words or phrases. 接下来,把纸和笔准备好,因为你也许想把有用的单词或短语记下来。

as 在此处作连词,意为"因为"。

Unit 4 Amazing Science

Topic 1 When was it invented?

Section A

1. It's made of metal. 它是用金属做的。

be made of... 意为"用……制造的(从成品中仍可看得出原材料)"。

be made from... 意为"用·····制造的(从成品中看不出原材料)"。

be made by... 意为"由(被)……制作",后接表示人的名词或代词。



be made in... 意为"在……制造",后接表示地点或时间的名词。

be made into... 意为"(某物)被制成……"。如:

The desk is made of wood. 这张桌子是用木头做的。

The paper is made from wood. 纸是用木头做的。

Was this cake made by your mother? 这蛋糕是你妈妈做的吗?

This cellphone is made in America. 这部手机是美国制造的。

Metal can be made into all kinds of things. 金属可以制成各种各样的物品。

2. It's used for sending satellites or spaceships into space. 它用来向太空发射卫星或宇宙飞船。be used for... 意为"(被)用来……"(强调用途或作用)。

be used to do... 意为"(被)用来做……"(强调目的)。

be used as... 意为"(被)用作……"(强调被当做工具或手段来用)。

be used by... 意为"被……使用", by 后接人或物(强调使用者)。如:

Stamps are used for sending letters. 邮票是用来寄信的。

The same words were used to describe his feelings. 同样的语言被用来描述他的感情。

"Swim" can be used as a noun.单词 swim 可作为名词使用。

Recorders are often used by English teachers. 英语老师经常使用录音机。

3. I wish I could go into space some day. 我梦想有一天可以遨游太空。

这个句子表达了康康的主观愿望和对未来的梦想,由于此愿望不一定能够实现,所以从句用了情态动词 can 的过去式 could,这是虚拟语气的一种用法。

Section B

It's said that he invented more than two thousand things during his life. 据说他(托马斯・爱迪生)一生中发明了两千多种东西。

It's said that...意为"据说……"。如:

It's said that she lived to be over 100. 据说她活了 100 多岁。

Section C

1. Inventions come about in many ways. 发明有多种产生方式。come about 意为"发生,产生"。如:

Can you tell me how the accident came about?

你能告诉我事故是怎样发生的吗?

2. This is the time to brainstorm for ideas and to evaluate them. 这时你应该多想主意,并对它们进行评估。

brainstorm 意为"集思广益:集体献计"。如:

Brainstorm as many ideas as possible. 大家尽量动脑筋想办法。

Section D

文化背景知识

GPS,即全球定位系统(Global Positioning System),它是一个中距离圆形轨道卫星定位系统,可以为地球表面绝大部分地区提供准确的定位和高精度的时间基准。该系统是通过太空中的24颗GPS卫星来完成的。最少需要其中3颗卫星,就能迅速确定你在地球上的位置。所能接收到的卫星数越多,译码出来的位置就越精确。

Topic 2 I'm excited about the things that will be discovered in the future.

Section C

1. ...and is named after Mars, the Roman god of war. ······它是以罗马战神玛尔斯的名字命名的。name...after... 意为"以······命名"。如:



He was named after his father. 他以其父亲的名字命名。

2. Its diameter is 53% as wide as that of the earth. 它的直径是地球直径的 53%。

倍数的表示法:倍数+as+形容词或副词原级+as。如:

This box is four times as heavy as that one. 这个盒子是那个盒子的 4 倍重。

3. Mars goes around the sun at a distance of about 228 million kilometers. 火星在距太阳大约 228 000 000千米处环绕着太阳转。

at a distance of... 意为"相隔……"。

at/from a distance 意为"在远处"。如:

The police followed him at a distance. 警察远远地跟着他。

4. It takes a spaceship about eight months to reach Mars from the earth when the two planets are closest to each other. 当两个星球(地球和火星)距离最近时,宇宙飞船从地球驶到火星要花费大约八个月的时间。

closest 是 close 的最高级形式,当形容词的最高级作表语时,定冠词 the 可以省略。

- 5. It has been two days since we landed on Mars. 我们登上火星已经两天了。
- it 用作主语谈论时间,与 since 连用的常见结构有两种形式:
- (1) It has been+一段时间+since+从句
- (2) It is+一段时间+since+从句 如:

It has been a long time since they left.=It is a long time since they left. 他们已经离开很久了。 How long has it been since we last time went to the theater? 我们多久没去看戏了?

Section D

Some spaceships have gone beyond the solar system. 一些飞船已到了太阳系以外的地方。beyond 意为"在(向)……较远的一边;超出,除……之外;晚于,迟于"。如:

Our success was far beyond what we thought. 我们的成功远远超出我们的预想。

文化背景知识

太阳系的八大行星

(Eight planets of the Solar System)

太阳系八大行星分别是:水星、金星、地球、火星、木星、土星、天王星和海王星。太阳系最大的行星是木星,最小的是水星。行星由太阳往外的顺序是:水星(Mercury)、金星(Venus)、地球(Earth)、火星(Mars)、木星(Jupiter)、土星(Saturn)、天王星(Uranus)、海王星(Neptune)。这些行星都以太阳为中心沿椭圆轨道公转。

Topic 3 China is the third nation that sent a person into space.

Section A

It proves that China has made great progress in its space industry. 那证明中国已在航天事业上取得了巨大进步。

prove 意为"证明;证实"。常用于以下两种形式:

(1) prove+(that)从句意为"证明……"。如:

This proves that I was right. 这证明我是对的。

(2) prove ... to ... 意为"向·····证明······;给·····证实·····"。如:

Just give me a chance and I'll prove it to you. 只要给我个机会,我就会证明给你看。 文化背景知识

神舟五号(Shenzhou V)

2003 年 10 月 15 日 9 时 0 分,"神舟"五号载人飞船发射成功,将中国第一名航天英雄杨利伟送上太空,中国成为世界上第三个能够独立开展载人航天活动的国家。飞船环绕地球 14 圈后返回地面。继"神舟"五号之后,我国在 2005 年,2008 年,2012 年和 2013 年分别成功发射了"神舟"六号,"神舟"七号,"神舟"九号和"神舟"十号载人飞船,标志着我国航天事业再上新台阶。



嫦娥一号(Chang'e I)

2007年10月24日18时5分,"嫦娥"一号卫星被成功送入太空。它是由我国自主研制的第一颗月球探测卫星,它的成功发射,标志着中国成为世界上第五个发射月球探测器的国家。

东方红一号(Dongfanghong I)

"东方红一号"卫星是我国的第一颗人造卫星,由以钱学森为首任院长的中国空间技术研究院研制,于1970年4月24日在酒泉卫星发射中心发射升空。"东方红一号"卫星的发射标志着我国成为世界上继前苏联、美国、法国和日本之后第五个能独立发射人造卫星的国家。

尼尔・奥尔登・阿姆斯特朗

(Neil Alden Armstrong)

尼尔·奥尔登·阿姆斯特朗(1930年—2012年),美国著名宇航员。1969年7月16日,同奥尔德林和柯林斯(由他担任指令长)乘"阿波罗11号"宇宙飞船,飞向月球。7月20日,阿姆斯特朗"飞鹰"号登月舱在月球表面着陆。阿姆斯特朗率先踏上月球表面,成为第一个在月球上行走的人。当时他说出了无数场合常被引用的一句名言:"这是个人迈出的一小步,但却是人类迈出的一大步。"

Section C

1. There is no doubt that computers are very useful in technology and business. 毫无疑问,电脑在技术和商业领域中很有使用价值。

There is no doubt that... 意为"无疑,毫无疑问……"。如:

There is no doubt at all that we did the right thing. 毫无疑问,我们做得对。

2. Besides, not everything we read on the Internet is true or good for us. 此外,我们在因特网上所读到的一切对我们来说并非都是真实或有益的。

besides 作副词,意为"而且,还有"。如:

I don't really want to go. Besides, it's too late now. 我真的不想去。而且现在太晚了。

besides 还可作介词,意为"除……之外",表示都在范围之内。如:

Besides English, we study many other subjects. 除了英语,我们还学许多其他课程。(也学英语)

except 意为"除……之外",强调所排除的不在范围之内。如:

They all went there except Li Ming. 除了李明之外,他们都去那儿了。(李明没去)

Section D

No one knows for certain, but most people think that robots will be part of our lives. 没人确切地知道(未来会是什么样),但是大多数人认为机器人将会成为我们生活的一部分。

know/say for certain 意为"确切地知道/肯定地说"。如:

I know for certain that he's there, but he doesn't answer me. 虽然我知道他肯定就在那儿,但他就是不回应。



Grammar 语法

I. 数词(Numerals)

- 1. 英语中百位数与十位数之间要用 and 连接(美国英语中 and 可省略),在千位数中,如果百位数为零,要在千位数的后面加 and,千位数与百位数之间不用任何词或符号连接。如:
 - 129 one hundred and twenty-nine

1 015 one thousand and fifteen

103 one hundred and three

2 468 two thousand, four hundred and sixty-eight

- 2. 英语中表示数词"万"要在 thousand 前加上十位数或百位数,"万"为 ten thousand,"十万"为 one/a hundred thousand。如:
 - eleven thousand, three hundred and twenty-one
 - one hundred and twenty-three thousand, four hundred and fifty-six
 - 2 432 529 two million, four hundred and thirty-two thousand, five hundred and twenty-nine

Ⅱ. 不定代词(Indefinite Pronouns)

不明确指代某(些)事物或某(些)人的代词叫做不定代词。

小奶佣有代来(些)事物或来(些)八的代码叫做个定代码。								
	可	数		不 可 数				
许 多		many			much			
- 些			some, any					
=		a few		a little				
几乎没有		few		little				
	毎 个 任何一个			都	都不	另一个		
指两者 each		either	both		neither	(the)other		
两者以上	each/every	any	all		none/no	another		

	some-	any-	no-	every-
,	someone	anyone	no one/none	everyone
	somebody	anybody	nobody	everybody
物	something	anything	nothing	everything

1. some-/any-复合代词的用法与 some/any 的用法基本一致。肯定句以及期待肯定回答的疑问句中通常用前者;否定句和疑问句通常用后者。如:

I saw someone in the room. 我看见房间里有人。

Would you like *something* to drink? 你要点儿喝的东西吗?

She didn't say *anything*. 她什么也没说。

2. 不定代词在句中可以作主语、表语和宾语。如:

Everyone in our class likes sports. 我们班的每个人都喜欢运动。(作主语)

I know *nothing* about this. 我对此事一无所知。(作宾语)

Money isn't everything. 金钱不是一切。(作表语)

3. 不定代词作主语时,谓语动词用单数形式。如:

Somebody has turned off the light. 有人把灯关了。

Everything goes well. 一切进展顺利。

4. 形容词修饰不定代词时应该放在不定代词之后。如:



He did *everything possible* to make her happy. 他做了他所能做的一切事情逗她开心。 I have *something important* to tell you. 我有重要的事要告诉你。

Ⅲ. 构词法(Word Formation)

语言按一定的规律和习惯创造新词。英语的构词方法主要有四种:合成、派生、转化和缩略。 合成是指由两个或两个以上的词构成一个新词;派生是指一个词通过加前缀或后缀构成一个 新词;转化是指由一类词转化为另一类或几类词;缩略是指一个词通过缩略方法构成一个新词。 通过前三种方法构成的新词词义有变化,而第四种方法不改变原词义。

- 1. 合成法(Compounding)
- (1) 合成名词,如:classroom(教室), spaceship(宇宙飞船), blackboard(黑板), firewood (木柴),toothbrush(牙刷)
- (2) 合成形容词,如:overtime(超时的), good-looking(好看的), handmade(手工制作的), hard-working(勤劳的), kind-hearted(好心的)
- (3) 合成代词,如:herself(她自己), ourselves(我们自己), somebody/someone (某人), nothing (没有东西), anything(任何东西)
- (4) 合成动词,如:sleepwalk(梦游), whitewash(粉刷), underline(在……下画线), overcome (克服)
 - (5) 合成副词,如:everywhere(到处), somewhere(某处), downstairs(在楼下)
 - 2. 派生法(Derivation)
 - (1) 前缀(Prefix)

(- / 1	(1) 110-3X(11011X)							
前缀	含义	例 词						
dis-	表示"不"	dislike(不喜欢), disappear(消失), disagreement(不同意), disappointed(失望的), discover(发现)						
im-	表示"不"	impossible(不可能的), impolite(不礼貌的)						
in-	表示"不"	incorrect(不正确的), indirect(间接的), incomplete(不完整的)						
inter-	表示"互相", "在之间"	international(国际的), Internet(因特网), interview(采访)						
mini-	表示"小"	minibus(小型公共汽车,中巴), miniskirt(超短裙)						
mis-	表示"错误"	mistake(错误), misunderstand(误解)						
non-	表示"不"	non-fiction(非小说类文学作品), non-cooperation(不合作)						
pre-	表示"在之前"	pre-school(学前), pre-reading(读前的), preview(预习)						
re-	表示"重复"	retell(复述), rewrite(重写), return(返回), review(复习)						
sub-	表示"在下面"	subway(地铁)						
super-	表示"超"	supermarket(超市), superman(超人), superstar(超级明星)						
tele-	表示"远"	telephone(电话), telescope(望远镜)						
un-	表示"不","非"	unhappy(不幸福的), unfair(不公平的), unlike(不像), uncertain(不确信的), unknown(未知的), unusual(不同寻常的)						

(2) 后缀(Suffix)

后缀通常使词由一种词类转为另一种词类。常见的后缀有:

- ①构成名词常用的后缀
- -an: American(美国人), Italian(意大利人)



- -er: worker(工人), driver(司机), teacher(教师), player(选手), painter(绘画者)
- -ess: actress(女演员), waitress(女服务员)
- -or: actor(演员), visitor(参观者), sailor(海员)
- -ian: musician(音乐家)
- -ist: artist(艺术家), scientist(科学家)
- -ance: appearance(出现), performance(表演)
- -ing: reading(阅读), swimming(游泳), hearing(听力)
- -ment: agreement(同意), basement(地下室), announcement(通知), entertainment(娱乐)
- -ness: illness(疾病), homelessness(无家可归), kindness(慈祥), happiness(幸福)
- -sion: decision(决定), discussion(讨论), conclusion(结论)
- -tion: education(教育), organization(组织), invention(发明)
- -th: truth(事实)
- ②构成形容词常用的后缀
- -al: national(民族的), environmental(环境的), personal(个人的), educational(有教育意义的)
- -able: countable(可数的), changeable(易变的), reusable(可循环利用的)
- -ed: surprised(惊奇的), fried(油煎的)
- -en: woolen(羊毛的), wooden(木料的), golden(金黄色的)
- -ful: useful(有用的), beautiful(美丽的), successful(成功的), harmful(有害的)
- -ing: interesting(有趣的), exciting(令人兴奋的)
- -ic/-cal: heroic(英雄的), historic (有历史意义的), historical (历史上的)
- -ive: creative(创造性的)
- -less: homeless(无家可归的), useless(无用的)
- -ly: friendly(友好的), lovely(可爱的)
- -ous: dangerous(危险的)
- -v: cloudy(阴天的), windy(有风的)
- ③构成动词常用的后缀
- -en: deepen(加深)
- -ize: apologize(道歉), modernize(使现代化)
- ④构成副词常用的后缀
- -ly: carefully(小心地), quickly(迅速地), orally(口头地)
- 3. 转化法(Conversion)
- (1) 名词转化为动词: water(水→浇水), hand(手→传递), color(颜色→染色)
- (2) 形容词转化为名词: daily (日常的→日报), high(高的→最高水平)
- (3) 动词转化为名词: look(看, 瞧), talk(谈话), swim(游泳)
- (4) 形容词转化为动词: clean(清洁的→清扫), slow(慢的→放慢)
- (5) 副词转化为动词: down(向下→打倒,放下)
- 注:一个词也可以不经过任何变化由一种词类转化为另外几种词类。如 like 既可以作动词, 又可以作名词、介词、连词、形容词和副词。
 - 4. 缩略法(Acronym Formation)
 - TV = television(电视), ad = advertisement(广告), WWW = World Wide Web(万维网)
 - DIY = do it yourself(自己动手), WTO = World Trade Organization(世贸组织)
 - HK=Hong Kong(香港), BBC=British Broadcasting Corporation(英国广播公司)



Ⅳ. 现在完成时(Present Perfect)

1. 现在完成时的构成

现在完成时由"助动词 have/has +动词的过去分词"构成。现以动词 work 为例,将现在完成时的肯定式、否定式和疑问式及其简略答语列表如下:

肯 定 式		7	5 定 式			
I/You have worked.		I/You have not work	I/You have not worked.			
He/She/It <i>has worked</i> .		He/She/It has not worked.				
We/You/They have worked.		We/You/They have not worked.				
疑问式和简略答语						
Have I/you worked?	Yes, y	you/I <i>have</i> .	No, you/I haven't.			
Has he/she/it worked?	Yes, l	ne/she/it <i>has</i> .	No, he/she/it <i>hasn't</i> .			
Have we/you/they worked?	Yes, y	you/we/they <i>have</i> .	No, you/we/they <i>haven't</i> .			

注:规则动词的过去分词的构成与过去式相同:不规则动词的过去分词见本书《不规则动词表》。

2. 现在完成时的用法

用法	例 句
表示过去发生或已经完成的某一动作对	-Have you found him yet?
现在造成的影响或结果。	—No, he <i>has</i> probably <i>gone</i> home.(现在不在这里)
表示开始于过去并持续到现在的动作或	I haven't seen her these days.
状态,可以和表示从过去某一时刻延续到	He <i>has taught</i> us <i>since</i> I came to this school.
现在(包括"现在"在内)的一段时间的状	How long have you been like this?
语连用。表示持续动作或状态的动词多	I have been like this since last month.
是延续性动词。	She <i>has lived</i> here <i>for</i> three years.
	I've <i>just</i> called you.
现在全战时可以到: 1 1 1	She has <i>already</i> finished it.
现在完成时可以和 just, already, yet, ever, never, before 等词连用。	Has Kangkang come back yet?
never, before 等四连用。	Have you ever cooked at home?
	I have <i>never</i> seen such a beautiful place <i>before</i> .
have/has been to 和 have/has gone to 的	—Where <i>have</i> you <i>been</i> ?
区别:	—I have been to Beijing.(去过北京,已经回来)
have/has been to 表示"曾经到过某地"。	—Where is Jane?
have/has gone to 表示"已经去某地了"。	—She has gone to Beijing.(去北京了,不在此处)

3. 短暂性动词的完成时态不能和表示一段时间的时间状语连用,当它需要与表示一段时间的时间状语连用时,通常要进行词语转化,其转化形式为:

buy — havecome — beget to know — knowbegin — be oncatch a cold — have a coldmarry — be marriedborrow — keepdie — be deadleave — be away(from)close — be closedfall ill — be illjoin — be a member of/be in

The film has been on for half an hour.(正) The film has begun for half an hour.(误)

The bookstore has been closed since last month.(正) The bookstore has closed since last month.(误) 注:短暂性动词的完成时态在否定句中可以和表示一段时间的状语连用。如:



I haven't seen him for a long time. 我已经好久没有看到他了。

4. 现在完成时和一般过去时的区别

现在完成时表示过去发生或已经完成的动作对现在造成的影响或结果,强调的是现在的情况,所以它不能直接和表示过去某一时间的时间状语连用,如:yesterday, last night, three weeks ago, in 2007 等。而一般过去时只表示过去的动作或状态,和现在不发生联系,强调的是过去的情况,它可以和表示过去某一时间的时间状语连用。如:

I have been to Beijing. 我去过北京。(我对北京有所了解)

I went to Beijing last year. 我去年去过北京。(只说我去年去过北京,不涉及现在的情况)

She has lived here *since 2000*. 2000 年以来她一直住在这里。(她现在还住在这里)

She lived here *in 2000*. 2000 年她住在这里。(不涉及现在她是否还住在这里)

V. 被动语态(The Passive Voice)

英语动词有两种语态,即主动语态(The Active Voice)和被动语态(The Passive Voice)。主动语态表示主语是动作的执行者,被动语态表示主语是动作的承受者。如:

Granny takes care of the girl. 奶奶照顾小女孩。

(Granny 是动作 take care of 的执行者,属主动语态)

The girl is taken care of by Granny. 小女孩由奶奶来照顾。

(the girl 是动作 take care of 的承受者,属被动语态)

1. 被动语态的构成

被动语态由"be+及物动词的过去分词"构成。be 有人称、数和时态的变化,其肯定式、否定式、疑问式的变化规则与 be 作为系动词时完全一样。如:

English is widely used around the world. 英语在世界上被广泛使用。

English *is not* widely *used* around the world. 英语在世界上不被广泛使用。

Is English widely used around the world? 英语在世界上被广泛使用吗?

Yes, it is. / No, it isn't. 是的。/ 不,不被广泛使用。

Why is English used widely? 为什么英语被广泛使用?

The bulb was invented in 1879. 灯泡是 1879 年发明的。

Where **were** laptops **invented**? 笔记本电脑在哪发明的?

I don't think aliens will be found in space.我认为在太空中不会发现外星人。

When will the movie be shown? 电影何时上映?

2. 被动语态的用法

当我们只需强调动作的承受者,或者不知道谁是动作的执行者,或者没有必要指出谁是动作的执行者时,要用被动语态。动作的执行者一般由 by 引出或省略。如:

Spanish is spoken as the official language there. 在那儿,西班牙语是官方语言。

It was created by American scientists in 1997. 它于 1997 年由美国科学家创建。

The problem has been solved.(现在完成时)这个问题已经得到了解决。

I was bought a cellphone by my father last week. = A cellphone was bought for me by my father last week. 上周我父亲给我买了一部手机。

注:(1)不及物动词不能直接用于被动语态。如:

The girl will be well cared for. 这个女孩将被很好地照顾。

(2) 主动句中的宾语补足语如果是不带 to 的不定式,如 make/see/feel/hear/notice sb. do sth. 等,在变被动句时,要加上 to。如:

They heard a girl sing in the next room. 他们听到隔壁房间有个女孩在唱歌。

 \rightarrow A girl was heard to sing in the next room(by them).



Ⅵ. 并列句(Compound Sentences)

并列句是由并列连词把两个或两个以上的简单句连在一起构成的句子,连词前可用逗号,也可不用逗号。

1. 表示并列关系,常用连接词有 and 等。如:

His father is a teacher and his mother is a doctor. 他的父亲是一位老师,母亲是一位医生。

2. 表示转折关系,常用连词 but, while 等。如:

I bought my sister a present, *but* she didn't like it. 我给妹妹买了一件礼物,但是她并不喜欢。
Tom does housework every day *while* his sister does nothing. 汤姆每天都做家务活,而他的妹妹什么也不做。

3. 表示选择关系,常用连词 or, either ... or ... 等。如:

Do it yourself or ask somebody else to do it. 你自己做这件事,或者请别人做也可以。

Either he could not come or he did not want to. 他要么是不能来,要么是不想来。

4. 表示因果关系,常用连词 so, for 等。如:

Her mother is ill, **so** she has to stay at home and look after her. 她的母亲病了,所以她不得不待在家里照顾她。

The ground is very wet, for it rained last night. 地面很湿,因为昨晚下雨了。

Ⅷ. 定语从句 I(Attributive Clauses I)

在复合句中,修饰某一名词或代词的从句叫做定语从句,被修饰的名词或代词叫做先行词。 从句放在所修饰词(即先行词)之后,由关系代词引导。如:

The story (that) you read is The Rescue. 你读的故事是《营救》。

He who laughs last laughs best. 笑到最后的人笑得最好。

以上两句中的 story 和 he 是先行词, that 和 who 为关系代词, 分别在定语从句中充当宾语和主语。

由关系代词引导的定语从句

引导词	所修饰的先行词	在从句中所作的成分	例句
who	人	主语、宾语、表语	The foreigner who visited our school yesterday is from Canada. (作主语)
whom	人	宾语	The boy (whom) we met is Li Ming's brother.(作宾语)
which	物	主语、宾语	The fish which we bought were not fresh.(作宾语)
whose	人或物	定语	Hang is the boy <i>whose</i> mother is our maths teacher.(作定语)
that	人或物	主语、宾语、表语	A plane is a machine <i>that</i> can fly.(作主语)



Words and Expressions in Each Unit 各单元词汇表

注:黑体词为《英语课程标准》要求掌握的词,白体词为课文中要求理解的词。 单词后的数字是指此词第一次出现的页码。本词汇表采用 IPA (International Phonetic Alphabet 国际音标)标注系统。

Unit 1		fax /fæks/ n.传真;传真机	(6)		
		machine /məˈʃiːn/ n.机器,机械	(6)		
Topic 1 Our country has develo	ned	rapid /ˈræpɪd/ adj.迅速的,快速的	(6)		
	pcu	progress / 'pra:gres/; / 'prəugres/ n.进步	(6)		
rapidly.	(-)	v.进展;逐步发展			
take place 发生,进行	(1)	make progress 取得进展,取得进步	(6)		
volunteer /ˌvɒlənˈtɪə(r) / n.志愿者	(1)	already /ɔːlˈredi/ adv.已经,早已	(6)		
bell /bel/ n.钟(铃)声;铃,钟	(1)	succeed in doing sth. 成功地做了某事	(6)		
Africa /ˈæfrɪkə/ n.非洲	(2)	pleased /plixzd/ adj.高兴的	(6)		
disabled /dɪsˈeɪbld/ adj.残疾的,残废的	(3)	leisure /ˈliɪʒər/; /ˈleʒə(r)/ n.闲暇,空闲	(7)		
shut /ʃʌt/ v.关闭,关上	(4)	hide /haɪd/ v.躲藏;遮挡;隐瞒	(7)		
ever /ˈevə(r) / adv.在任何时候,从来	(4)	hide-and-seek / haɪd n 'siːk/ n.捉迷藏游风			
rope /rəup/ n.绳子,绳索	(4)	chess /t∫es/ n.国际象棋	(7)		
narrow /ˈnærəu/ adj.狭窄的	(5)	radio /ˈreɪdiəʊ/ n.收音机	(7)		
communication /kəˌmjuːnɪˈkeɪ∫n/ n.通i	spare /speə(r) / adj.空闲的;空余的 (7				
交流;交往	(5)	recent / ri:snt / adj.近来的,最近的	(8)		
various /'veriəs/; /'veəriəs/ adj.各种各样	的;	abroad /əˈbrɔːd/ adv.在国外;到国外	(8)		
多姿多彩的	(5)	,			
report /rɪˈpɔː(r)t/ n.& v.报告,汇报	(5)	Topic 2 The population in develo	ping		
keep in touch with 跟保持联系	(5)	countries is growing fast			
relative / relativ/ n.亲属,亲戚	(5)	yet /jet/ adv.还,仍	(9)		
telegram / 'telɪgræm/ n.电报;电文	(5)	probably /'pra:bəbli/; /'probəbli/ adv.	(-)		
rapidly /ˈræpɪdli/ adv.快速地,迅速地	(6)	很可能,大概	(9)		
since /sins/ prep. 自 ······以后,从 ······以来	₹(6)	cinema /ˈsɪnəmə/ n.电影院	(10)		
conj.从·····以后;既然,因为		department /dr/par(r)tmənt/ store 百货公			
reform /rɪˈfɔː(r)m/ n.改革,改良	(6)	1 1 ()	(10)		
reform and opening-up 改革开放	(6)	nearby /ˌnɪəˈbaɪ/ adj.附近的,邻近的	(10)		
satisfy /'sætɪsfaɪ/ v.使满意,使满足	(6)	adv.在附近,不远			
medical / medɪkl/ adj. 医学的; 医疗的	(6)	population / parpju'leisn/; / popju'leis	n/		
cellphone /'selfəun/ = mobile phone		<i>n</i> .人口,人数	(11)		
n.移动电话,手机	(6)	billion /'bɪljən/ num.十亿	(11)		

increase /ɪnˈkriːs/ v.(使)增加,(使)增大/ˈɪŋkriːs/ n.增加,增多,增大	(11)	block /block/; /block/ n.街道(区);(方形式大块	平面) (17)
reach /rixt∫/ v.实现;达到;够得着;到达	$\Xi(11)$	artist/'ɑː(r)tɪst/ n.艺术家,(尤指)画家	(18)
luckily /'lʌkɪli/ adv.幸运地,运气好地	(11)	millions of 大量;数以百万计	(18)
policy /'pɑːləsi/; /'pɒləsi/ n.政策,方针	(11)	visitor/'vɪzɪtə(r)/ n.游客;来访者;参观者	(18)
Russia /ˈrʌʃə/ n.俄罗斯	(12)	industry /'ɪndəstri/ n.行业;工业	(18)
measure /'meʒə(r)/ n.措施,方法	(12)	chemistry / kemɪstri / n.化学;化学物质	(18)
social /ˈsəʊʃl/ adj.社会的; 社交的	(13)	term /t3x(r)m/ n.学期;词语;措辞	(18)
supply /sə'plaɪ/ v.提供,供应	(13)	program / 'prəugræm/ n. 计划,方案;节目	(19)
n.供应量;补给;供应		homeless / həumləs/ adj.无家的	(19)
natural / 'næt∫rəl/ adj.天然的;天生的	(13)	manage / mænɪdʒ / v. 完成(困难的事);	
worse /ws:(r)s/adj.更差的,更糟的	(13)	能解决(问题)	(19)
adv.更差,更糟		treatment /'trixtmənt/ n.疗法,治疗	(19)
so far 到目前为止	(13)	training / treɪnɪŋ/ n.训练,培训	(19)
government /'gʌvə(r)nmənt/ n.政府,内阁	(13)	immediately /ɪˈmiːdiətli/ adv.立刻,立即	(20)
take measures to do sth.采取措施做某事	(13)	conj.—······就,即刻	
thanks to 幸亏,由于	(13)	secretary /ˈsekrəteri/; /ˈsekrətri/ n.秘中	§(20)
paragraph / pærəgræf/; / pærəgra:f/		helper / helpə(r) / n.帮手,助手	(20)
n.段;段落	(13)	club /klʌb/ n.俱乐部	(20)
opportunity / a:pər tu:nəti/; / apə tju:n	əti/	engineer / endʒɪˈnɪə(r)/ n.工程师,设计师	(20)
n.机会,时机	(14)	wound /wuːnd/ n.创伤;伤口	(20)
newborn / 'nuxbɔ:rn/; / 'njuxbɔ:n/ adj.新生	上的,	v. 伤, 伤害	
初生的	(14)	basic / beisik / adj.基本的,基础的	(21)
percent /pə(r)'sent/ n.百分之	(14)	human /ˈhjuːmən/ adj.人的 n.人	(21)
offer /'ɔːfə(r)/; /'ɒfə(r)/ v.提供(东西	 	value /'væljuː/ v.重视,珍视	(21)
机会);主动提出	(14)	n. 价值	
surround /səˈraund/ v.围绕,环绕	(15)	period / 'pɪəriəd/ n.一段时间,时期	(21)
garbage /ˈgɑː(r)bɪdʒ/ n.(生活)垃圾,原	妄物;	shelter /ˈʃeltə(r) / n.收容所;遮蔽物	(21)
垃圾场	(15)	homelessness / həumləsnəs / n.无家可归	(21)
discourage /dis'k3:rid3/; /dis'kArid3/		earn /31(r)n/ v.挣钱;挣得,赢得	(21)
v.阻拦,阻止;使灰心	(15)	drug /drʌq/ n.毒品;药,药物	(21)
local /ˈləʊkl/ adj. 当地的,本地的	(15)	mental / mentl/ adj.精神健康的;思想的	(21)
capital /ˈkæpɪtl/ n.首都;资本	(16)	on purpose 故意,有意地	(21)
huge /hjuːdʒ/ adj.巨大的,极多的	(16)	whatever /wət'evə(r)/; /wɒt'evə(r)/	
market /ˈmɑː(r)kɪt/ n.集市,市场	(16)	无论什么,不管什么;任何事物	(21)
transportation / trænspɔː(r) 'teɪ∫n/ n.运	输	effect /I fekt / n.影响,结果;效果	(21)
	(16)	steal /stixl/ v.偷,窃取	(21)
excellent / 'eksələnt / adj.优秀的,杰出的	(16)	support /səˈpɔː(r)t/ v.帮助,援助;支持	(21)
		phrase /freiz/ n.短语,词组	(22)
Topic 3 The world has changed	for	according /əˈkɔː(r)dɪŋ/ to 据所说,	
the better.		按所报道	(22)
as a matter of fact 事实上,其实	(17)	context /'ka:ntekst/; /'kontekst/ n. _	

77 IA - 16 E		- de Communicación de la lateración de la communicación de la comm	
语境;背景	(22)	butterfly /'bʌtə(r)flaɪ/ n.蝴蝶;蝶泳	(27)
laborer /ˈleɪbərə(r) / n. 体力劳动者,劳工		mess / mes / n. 肮脏,杂乱;困境	(27)
and the second s	(22)	shame /ʃeɪm/ n. 羞耻, 羞愧	(27)
cruel /kru:əl/ adj. 残酷的,冷酷的	(22)	several /ˈsevrəl/ det.& pron.几个,数个	(27)
project /'prɑːdʒekt/; /'prɒdʒekt/ n.专题		pour /pɔː(r) / v. 倒出;倾泻;不断流出	(27)
项目;方案	(23)	waste /weist / adj.废弃的,丢弃的,无用的	(27)
primary / praimeri/; / praimeri/ adj.		v. 浪费	
教育的;主要的;最初的	(23)	villager /'vilidʒə(r) / n.村民,乡下人	(28)
contribution /ˌkaɪntrɪˈbjuɪʃn/; /ˌkɒntrɪˈb		destroy /dɪˈstrɔɪ/ v.摧毁,破灭	(28)
n.贡献;捐款	(23)	cut down 砍倒	(28)
make a contribution to 为作贡献	(23)	pollute /pəˈluːt / v.污染	(28)
encourage /ɪnˈkɜːrɪdʒ/; /ɪnˈkʌrɪdʒ/ v.鼓励		goodness / 'gudnəs / n.天啊;啊呀	(28)
moral / mɔːrəl/; / mɒrəl/ adj.道德(上)的		breathe /brixð/ v.呼吸	(29)
development / dr'veləpmənt / n.发展;开发		pain /peɪn/ n.疼,痛,痛苦	(29)
respect /rɪˈspekt/ v. 尊敬,尊重	(24)	<pre>produce /prə'duɪs/; /prə'djuɪs/</pre>	
importance / impor(r) tns/ n.重要性,重要		v.生产,制造	(29)
continue /kənˈtɪnjuː/ v.持续,继续做	(24)	chest /t∫est/ n.胸部,胸膛	(29)
college /ˈkɑːlɪdʒ/;/ˈkɒlɪdʒ/ n.(美国)		awful /ˈɔːfl/ adj.很坏的,极讨厌的	(29)
(英国)学院	(24)	bear /beə(r) / v.承受,忍受	(29)
		editor /ˈedɪtə(r)/ n.主编,编辑	(30)
Review of Unit 1		breath /breθ/ n.一次吸入的空气	(30)
		soil /sɔɪl/ n.土壤;土地	(30)
indeed /ɪn'diːd/ adv.真正地;实际上	(25)	harmful /ˈhɑː(r)mfl/ adj.有害的	(30)
method /'meθəd/ n.方法,办法	(25)	be harmful to (尤指对健康或环境)有害的,	
teenager / ˈtiːneɪdʒə(r)/ n.(13~19 岁之间	的)	导致损害的	(30)
青少年	(26)	deaf /def / adj.聋的	(31)
hardly /'haː(r)dli/ adv.几乎不	(26)	print / prɪnt / v.印刷	(31)
plenty /'plenti/ pron.大量,众多,充足	(26)	hearing /ˈhɪərɪŋ/ n.听力,听觉	(31)
n. 充足, 大量		loss /loss/; /los/ n.丧失;损失;丢失	(31)
plenty of 大量的	(26)	recently /ˈriːsntli/ adv.不久前;最近	(31)
sunshine /'sʌnʃaɪn/ n.阳光,日光	(26)	disturb /dr'stɜː(r)b/ v.打扰;扰乱	(31)
sunbathe /'sʌnbeɪð/ v.沐日光浴;晒太阳	月(26)	do harm to 伤害,损害	(31)
beach /biɪt∫/ n.海滩,海滨	(26)	uncomfortable / An kAmftəbl / adj. 使人不舒服	段的;
volleyball /'vo:libɔːl/; /'volibɔːl/ n.排转	℟ (26)	令人不舒适的	(31)
cultural /ˈkʌlt∫ərəl/ adj.文化的	(26)	unpleasant /ʌn'plezənt/ adj.令人不快的	;
surf /s3:(r)f/ v.(互联网上)冲浪,浏览	£ (26)	不舒服的	(31)
		sort /sox(r)t/ n.种类,类别;品种	(31)
Unit 2		v.整理;把·····分类	
		environmental /ɪnˌvaɪrənˈmentl/ adj.环境的	(31)
Topic 1 Pollution has caused	too	including /ɪnˈkluːdɪŋ / prep.包括······在内	
many problems.		onto /ˈɑːntə/; /ˈɒntə/ prep.向,朝	(31)
bee /biː/ n.蜜蜂	(27)	sentence /ˈsentəns/ n. 句子;判决,宣判	(32)

coal /kəʊl/ n.煤;煤块	(33)	二氧化碳	(39)
create /kriˈeɪt/ v.造成;创造	(33)	form /fɔː(r)m/ v.(使)出现;(使)形成	(39)
blood /blad/ n. iii	(33)	n. 种类;形式	
high blood pressure /'pre∫ə(r)/ 高血压	(33)	blanket /'blæŋkɪt/ n.毛毯,毯子	(39)
planet /'plænɪt/ n.行星	(34)	escape /ɪˈskeɪp/ v.渗出;逃跑;逃脱	(39)
		rise /raɪz/ v.上升;起床;升起	(39)
Topic 2 All these problems an	re	the greenhouse effect 温室效应	(39)
very serious.		refer /rɪˈfɜː(r) / to 提到,涉及,有关	(40)
sand /sænd/ n.沙	(35)	shortage /ˈʃɔː(r)tɪdʒ/ n.不足;缺少;短缺	(41)
sandstorm / sændstox(r) m/ n.沙暴	(35)	avoid /əˈvɔɪd/ v.防止,避免	(41)
change into 转换成,变成	(35)	resource /ˈriːsɔːrs/; /rɪˈsɔːs/ n.资源;财力	(41)
desert /'dezə(r)t/n.沙漠	(35)	discover /dɪˈskʌvə(r) / v.发现,找到	(41)
/dɪˈzɜː(r)t/ v.舍弃,遗弃	. /	reuse /ˌriːˈjuːz/ v.再次使用;重复使用	(41)
human being / biːɪŋ/ n.人	(35)	thirsty /ˈθɜː(r)sti/ adj.缺水的;(口)渴的	(41)
although /ɔːlˈðəʊ/ conj.虽然,尽管,即信	. ,	nearly /'nɪəli/ adv.几乎,将近	(41)
reduce /rɪˈduːs/; /rɪˈdjuːs/ v.减少;减轻	(36)	law /lo:/ n.法律,法令;定律	(42)
completely /kəmˈpliːtli/ adv.彻底地;完整均	也(36)		
user /ˈjuːzə(r)/ n.使用者;用户	(37)	Topic 3 What can we do at ho	me to
none /nʌn/ pron.没有一个;毫无	(37)	protect the environme	nt?
rubbish / rʌbɪʃ/ n.垃圾;废弃物	(37)	protection /prəˈtek∫n/ n.保护;防卫	(43)
here and there 在各处;到处	(37)	organization /¡ɔɪrgənəˈzeɪʃn/; /ˌɔɪgənaɪˈz	eı∫n/
spit /spit/ v.吐,唾	(37)	n.组织;团体;机构	(43)
wild /waɪld/ adj.野的,野生的	(37)	recycle / ˈriːˈsaɪkl/ n. 回收利用;再利用	(43)
nobody /'nəubədi/ pron.没有人		plastic / plæstɪk / adj. 塑料的	(43)
n.小人物,无足轻重的人	(38)	can /kæn/ n.(美)罐子;罐头	(43)
untidy / An'taɪdi / adj. 不整洁的,凌乱的	(38)	nod /naːd/; /nɒd/ v.点头	(44)
worst /w3:(r)st/adj.最差的,最糟的	(38)	agreement /əˈɡriːmənt/ n.同意;一致;协议	(44)
rude /ruːd/ adj.无理的,粗鲁的	(38)	disagreement /ˌdɪsəˈgriːmənt/ n.分歧;争论	(44)
behavior /bɪˈheɪvjə(r) / n.行为,举止	(38)	hurry /'hɜːri/; /'hʌri/ v.& n. 赶快,匆忙	(44)
situation /ˌsɪtʃuˈeɪʃn/ n.状况;形势;局面	(38)	hurry up 赶快,快点	(44)
punish / pʌnɪʃ/ v.处罚,惩罚	(38)	give up 放弃	(44)
perhaps /pə(r) hæps/ adv.可能,大概	(38)	battery /ˈbætri/; /ˈbætəri/ n.电池	(44)
<pre>everybody /'evriba:di/; /'evribadi/</pre>		ought to /ˈɔːt tu/ modal v. 应该	(45)
pron.人人,每个人	(38)	shut off 停止,关掉	(45)
nowhere / 'nəuweə(r) / adv.无处;哪里都不	(38)	electricity /ɪˌlekˈtrɪsəti/ n.电;电能	(45)
take away 拿走	(39)	distance / distans/ n.距离	(45)
oxygen /ˈaːksɪdʒən/; /ˈɒksɪdʒən/ n.氧气	(39)	cloth /klɔːθ/;/klɒθ/ n.织物,布料	(45)
hole /həul/ n.洞,坑	(39)	action/ˈæk∫n/ n.行动;行为	(45)
ozone layer /ˈəʊzəʊn ˈleɪə(r)/ 臭氧层	(39)	after all 毕竟;归根结底	(46)
radiation /ˌreɪdɪˈeɪʃn/ n.放射,放射物	(39)	acid /ˈæsɪd/ rain 酸雨	(47)
directly /dəˈrektli/adv.直接地	(39)	nuclear / nu:kliə(r)/; / nju:kliə(r)/	
carbon dioxide /ˈkɑː(r)bən daɪˈɑːksaɪd	/	adj.原子核的,原子能的;核动力的	(47)

biogas / baɪəʊˈɡæs/ n.沼气	(47)	5	
technology /tek'naːlədʒi/; /tek'nɒlədʒ		Review of Units 1-2	
n.技术	(47)		
straw /stroː/ n.(收割后干燥的)禾秆,稻		colleague /ˈkɑːliːɡ/; /ˈkɒliːɡ/ n.同事,同僚	
	(47)	motorbike /'məutə(r)baɪk/ n.摩托车	(52)
renewable /rɪˈnuɪəbl/; /rɪˈnjuɪəbl/		gasoline /ˈgæsəliːn/ n.汽油	(52)
adj.可更新的,可再生的	(47)	anybody /'enibaːdi/; /'enibɒdi/ pron.	
disadvantage / ¡dɪsədˈvæntɪdʒ/; / ¡dɪsədˈvɑːntɪ	d3/	任何人,无论谁	(52)
n. 不利因素;障碍;不便之处	(47)	examine /ɪgˈzæmɪn/ v.检查,调查	(53)
process /'praises/; /'prauses/n.步骤,定	过程	marry /ˈmæri/ v.嫁;娶;结婚	(53)
v. 加工,处理	(47)	weight /we(ɪ)t/ n.重量;分量	(53)
require /rɪˈkwaɪə(r) / v.需要;要求	(47)	media /ˈmiːdiə/ n.传播媒介,传播工具	(53)
electric /ɪˈlektrɪk/ adj.用电的;电动的	(47)	package /ˈpækɪdʒ/ n.一包,一袋,一盒	(54)
best-known 最知名的	(47)	v.将包装好	
maglev /ˈmægləv/ train 磁悬浮列车 (47)		product /'pra:dakt/; /'prodakt/n.产品,	
German /ˈdʒɜː(r)mən/ n.德国人;德语	(47)	制品	(54)
per/pə(r)/prep.每,每一	(47)	excessive /ik'sesiv/ adj.过度的;过分的	(54)
wheel /wi:l/ n.轮,车轮,轮子	(47)	goods /gudz/ n.商品;货品	(54)
efficient / I f I f nt / adj.效率高的,有能力的	(47)	seriously /ˈsɪəriəsli/ adv.严重地;严肃地	(54)
guide /gaɪd/ n.向导,导游;指南,手册	(47)	video /ˈvɪdiəu/ n.录像带;录像	(54)
path /pæθ/; /pɑːθ/ n.道路;途径	(47)	allow /əˈlaʊ/ v.允许,准许	(54)
steel /stiːl/ n.钢,钢铁	(47)	quality /ˈkwɑːləti/; /ˈkwɒləti/ n.质量;	
wave /weiv/ n.挥手;招手;海浪	(48)	品质;人品	(54)
v.招手;摆手		historical /hɪˈstɔː(r)rɪkl/; /hɪˈstɒrɪkl/	
deep /dixp/ adj.深的;厚的	(48)	adj.(有关)历史的	(54)
adv.深深地;在深处		lifestyle /ˈlaɪfstaɪl/ n.生活方式;工作方:	式
source /sɔɪ(r)s/n.来源,出处;起源;源	头		(54)
	(48)	difference / dɪfrəns/ n.差别;差异	(54)
run out 用完,耗尽	(48)		
worldwide /'wɜː(r)ldwaɪd/ adv.全世界	,	Unit 3	
世界各地	(48)		
sunlight /'sʌnlaɪt/ n.阳光,日光	(48)	Topic 1 English is widely spok	en
steam /stirm/ n.水蒸气,蒸汽;水汽	(48)	throughout the world.	
remove /rɪˈmuːv/ v.去除,使消失;移开	(49)	cartoon /kaː(r) 'tuːn/ n.漫画	(55)
replace /rɪ'pleɪs/ v.代替,取代	(49)	character /ˈkærəktə(r) / n.(书、剧本、电	` ′
dry /draɪ/ adj.干燥的,雨少的;干性的	(49)	中的)人物,角色;(汉)字,字体;品格	
v.使·····干;弄干,擦干	(94)	widely /'waɪdli/ adv.普通地;广泛地	(55)
insect /'ɪnsekt/ n.昆虫	(49)	throughout /θrux'aut / prep.遍及;贯穿	(55)
bite /baɪt / v.咬;叮	(49)	from now on 从今往后,从现在开始	(55)
<pre>planter /'plæntə(r)/; /'plaintə(r)/</pre>		foreigner /ˈfɔːrənə(r)/; /ˈfɒrənə(r)/	(33)
n.种植园主	(49)	noteigner / 13.11ana(1)/; / 151ana(1)/	(56)

n. 外国人

film-maker 电影制作人

(56)

(56)

(49)



garage /gəˈrɑɪʒ/; /ˈɡærɑɪʒ/ n.停车房	;车库	leading /ˈliːdɪŋ/ adj.最重要的,最成功的	(61)
	(56)	position /pəˈzɪ∫n/ n. 位置;方位	(61)
be pleased with 对感到高兴;			
满意于	(56)	Topic 2 Some things usually ha	ave
on business 出差	(57)	different meanings in	
tonight /təˈnaɪt/ adv.在今晚	(57)	different cultures.	
Spanish /ˈspænɪʃ/ n.西班牙语	(57)	see off 为送行;送别	(63)
adj.西班牙人的;西班牙的;西班牙	语的	stranger /ˈstreɪndʒə(r) / n.陌生人	(63)
be similar to 与相似,与相像	(57)	thumb /θΛm/ n.拇指	(63)
communicate /kəˈmjuːnɪkeɪt / v.沟通,交流	流 (57)	ask for a ride 搭乘,搭车	(63)
conversation / ¡kɑːnvərˈseɪ∫n/; / ¡kɒnvə	'sei∫n/	minibus / minibas / n.小型公共汽车;中巴	
n.对话;谈话	(57)	give sb. a ride 让某人搭便车	(63)
interpreter /ɪn'tɜː(r)prɪtə(r)/ n.口译译员	员 (57)	get on 上车	(63)
explain /ɪkˈspleɪn/ v.解释,说明	(57)	flight /flart / n.航班飞机;空中航行	(63)
<pre>impossible /im'passebl/; /im'pasebl/</pre>	,	guidebook / gaɪdbuk/ n.旅游指南(或手	
adj.不可能存在的;不可能的	(57)	3	(63)
twin /twin/ adj.双胞胎之一的	(58)	whenever /wen'evə(r)/ conj.无论何时	
n. 双胞胎之一		在任何的时候	(63)
divide /dɪˈvaɪd/ v.分,划分	(58)	board /bɔː(r)d/ v.上(船、火车、飞机等	
divide into 把·····分成·····	(58)	住宿	(64)
dig /dɪɡ/ v.掘(地);凿(洞);挖(土)	(58)	bow /bau/ v.点头,鞠躬	(65)
lay /leɪ/ v.放置,安放,搁	(58)	silence /ˈsaɪləns/ n.沉默;无声	(65)
mother tongue /tʌŋ/ 母语	(59)	v.使安静;压制	
root /ruːt/ n.起源,根源;根;词根	(59)	hip /hɪp/ n.臀部;髋	(65)
trader /ˈtreɪdə(r)/ n.商人,买卖人	(59)	praise /preɪz/ v.& n.表扬,赞扬	(65)
native / neɪtɪv/ adj.出生地的,当地的	(59)	research /rɪˈsɜː(r)tʃ/ n.研究,调查,探索	(65)
speaker /ˈspiːkə(r) / n.讲(某种语言)	的人;	do some research 做调查	(65)
发言者	(59)	secret /ˈsiːkrət/ n.秘密	(66)
foreign /ˈfɔːrən/; /ˈfɒrən/ adj.外国的	J (59)	puzzled /'pʌzld/ adj.困惑的	(66)
base /beis/ n.根据;根基;总部	(59)	victory /'vɪktəri/ n.胜利	(66)
v.以为基础(或根据)		misunderstanding / misandə(r) stændin	/
European /ˌjʊ(ə)rəˈpiːən/ adj. 欧洲的	J(60)	n.误解,误会	(66)
kingdom / kɪŋdəm/ n.王国;管辖范围;领:	域(60)	typical / tɪpɪkl/ adj.典型的,有代表性的	(66)
tourism /ˈtʊ(ə)rɪzəm;ˈtɔːrɪzəm/ n.旅游』	业;观光	differently / dɪfrəntli/ adv.不同地,有差	异地
	(60)		(67)
conference / kainfərəns/; / konfərəns	s /	negative / negətiv/ adj. 负面的,消极的	(67)
n.(正式的)会议;商谈	(60)	consider /kənˈsɪdə(r) / v.认为,以为;考	虑到
tourist / 'turist/; / 'tuərist/ n.旅游者;游	存客		(67)
	(60)	honest /ˈɑːnɪst/; /ˈɒnɪst/ adj.诚实的,	
Britain / brɪtn/ n.英国;不列颠	(61)	老实的;坦率的	(67)
powerful /ˈpaʊə(r)fl/ adj.强大的;		positive /'paːzətɪv/; /'pɒzətɪv/ adj.正面	的;
有权势的:有影响力的	(61)	乐观的	(67)

at times 有时;间或 (67)	n.作文;作曲;构成	(72)
ancient /'eɪnʃənt/ adj.古代的;古老的 (67)	copy /'kaːpi/; /'kɒpi/ v.抄写;复印	(72)
magical/'mædʒɪkl/adj.奇妙的;有魔力的 (67)	notebook / nəutbuk/ n.笔记本	(72)
creature /ˈkriːtʃə(r) / n.生物;动物 (67)	diary /'daɪəri/ n.记事簿;日记,日记簿	(72)
emperor / empərə(r) / n. 皇帝 (67)	keep a diary 写目记	(72)
compare /kəmˈpeə(r) / v. 比较,对比 (67)	tape /teip/ n.磁带,录音带	(72)
compare to 把······比作····· (67)	aloud /əˈlaud/ adv.大声地	(73)
courage /ˈkɜːrɪdʒ/; /ˈkʌrɪdʒ/ n.勇气;胆略 (67)	object /ˈaːbdʒekt/; /ˈɒbdʒɪkt/ n.物品;	,
underline /ˌʌndə(r) ˈlaɪn/ v.在(词语等下)	东西;目的,目标	(73)
画线;画底线标出 (68)	textbook / tekstbuk/ n.教科书,课本	(73)
mistake /mɪˈsteɪk/ n.错误,失误 (68)	ability /əˈbɪləti/ n.能力;才能	(73)
v.误会,误解	take a breath 吸一口气	(73)
make mistakes 犯错误 (68)	toothpaste /ˈtuːθpeɪst/ n.牙膏	(74)
peacock /ˈpiːkɑːk/; /ˈpiːkɒk/ n.雄孔雀 (68)	preview /'priːvjuː/ v.预习;预告	(75)
pride /praɪd/ n.骄傲,自豪 (68)	review /rɪˈvjuː/ v.复习;回顾	(75)
wisdom / wizdəm/ n.智慧,精明 (68)	n.复习;复查;评论	
British / brɪtɪʃ / adj.英国的,英国人的 (69)	translate /træns leit / v.翻译	(75)
kowtow / kau'tau/ v.叩头,磕头;唯命是从 (69)	discussion /dr ska∫n/ n.讨论,谈论,商讨	(75)
expression /ɪkˈspreʃn/ n.词语;表达;表情 (69)	exactly /ɪgˈzæktli/ adv.精确地,确切地	(75)
spelling /'spelɪŋ/ n.拼写;拼法 (69)	honor /ˈɑːnər/; /ˈɒnə(r)/ n.尊敬,荣幸	(75)
elevator /ˈelɪveɪtə(r) / n.电梯;升降机 (69)	v.给予表扬(或者奖励、头衔、称号	;
pronunciation /prəˌnʌnsɪˈeɪ∫n/ n.发音 (69)	敬,尊重	
cent /sent/ n . $ (70) $	as long as 只要	(75)
cookbook / kukbuk/ n.烹饪书,烹饪菜谱 (70)	stick to (doing) sth. 坚持(做)某事	(75)
totally / təutəli/ adv.完全,全部地,整个地 (70)	chant /t∫ænt/; /t∫ɑːnt/ n.重复唱的歌ì	
	圣歌	(75)
Topic 3 Could you give us some	achieve /əˈtʃiːv/ v.达到,获得;成功	(76)
advice on how to learn	easily /ˈiːzəli/ adv. 容易地, 轻易地	(77)
English well?	download / daun'ləud/ v.下载	(77)
accent /ˈæksənt/; /ˈæksent/ n.口音,腔调(71)	actually /ˈæktʃuəli/ adv.的确,事实上	(77)
oral /ˈɔːrəl/ adj. 口头的 (71)	effective / I'fektɪv/ adj. 有效的,产生预期	
dare / deə(r) / modal v.敢,敢于 (71)	效果的	(77)
sleepy /ˈsliːpi/ adj. 想睡的, 困倦的, 瞌睡的 (71)	imitate /ˈɪmɪteɪt / v.模仿,仿效	(78)
final /ˈfaɪnl/ adj.最终的,最后的 (71)	D	
real /ˈriːəl/adj.真实的,实际存在的;真正的(72)	Review of Unit 3	
retell / riː tel/ v .复述,重新讲述 (72)		
indirect / indar rekt; ində rekt / adj. 间接的,	company /ˈkʌmpəni/ n.公司	(79)
附带的 (72)	bored /bɔː(r)d/ adj.厌倦的,烦闷的	(80)
granddaughter / ˈgrændɔːtə(r)/ n.(外)孙女 (72)	concentrate /ˈkɑːnsntreɪt/; /ˈkɒnsntreɪt	
pronounce /prəˈnaʊns/ v.发音,读(音) (72)	v.集中(注意力),聚精会神	(80)
dialog / 'daɪələɪɡ/; / 'daɪələg/ n.对话,对白 (72)	pull /pol/ v.拉;拽;扯;拖	(80)
composition / ka:mpə zı s / kampə zı s / kampə zı s / kampə zı s	fold /fəʊld/ v.折叠;包	(80)

mention / men∫n/ v.提到,说到 (80)	screen /skriːn/ n.屏幕;银幕	(90)
		alien /ˈeɪliən/ n.外星人	(90)
Unit 4		adj. 陌生的;外国的;外星的	
		outer space 外层空间	(90)
Topic 1 When was it invented?		describe /dɪˈskraɪb/ v.描述;形容;把······	称为
	81)		(90)
	81)	astronaut /ˈæstrənɔːt/ n.宇航员	(91)
	81)	admire /ədˈmaɪə(r) / v.钦佩,羨慕	(91)
	81)	master / mæstə(r) /; / mastə(r) /	
	82)	v. 掌握, 精通	(91)
v.(用锁)锁上,被锁住		n. 主人	
laptop /ˈlæptɑːp/; /ˈlæptɒp/ n.手提电脑 (82)	dancer /'dænsə (r) /; /'dɑɪnsə (r) / n .跳舞	锋者,
digital /'dɪdʒɪtl/ adj.数码的,数字的 (82)	舞蹈演员	(91)
bulb /bʌlb/ n.电灯泡 ()	83)	realize /ˈriːəlaɪz/; /ˈriəlaɪz/ v. (realise Brl	Ξ)
airplane /'eəpleɪn/ n.飞机 ()	83)	意识到,领会;实现	(91)
hard-wearing adj.耐磨的 (84)	universe /ˈjuːnɪvɜː(r)s/ n.宇宙	(92)
Korea /kəˈrɪə/ n.朝鲜;韩国 (84)	solar /ˈsəʊlə(r) / system 太阳系	(93)
invention /ɪnˈven∫n/ n.发明, 创造 (85)	Roman /ˈrəʊmən/ adj.古罗马的,古罗马帝国	
list /list / v.列清单,把列表 (85)		(93)
n.名单;目录;清单		god /gaːd/; /gɒd/ n.上帝;神	(93)
crayon /ˈkreɪən/ n.彩色铅笔(粉笔、蜡笔)等(85)	diameter /daɪˈæmɪtə(r) / n.直径	(93)
thought /θɔːt / n.想法,看法,主意 (85)	storm /stox(r)m/n.风暴,暴(风)雨	(93)
silly /ˈsɪli/ adj. 愚蠢的,傻的 (85)	gravity / grævəti/ n. 重力;引力	(93)
brainstorm / breɪnstɔː(r) m/ v.集思广益,		weigh /weɪ/ v.重,有······重	(93)
动脑筋 (85)	generally /ˈdʒenrəli/ adv.一般地,通常	(94)
evaluate /ɪˈvæljueɪt/ v.估值,评价,评估 (85)	journey /'dʒɜː(r) ni/ n. (尤指长途) 旅行	(94)
detailed /dr'teɪld/;/'diːteɪld/ adj.详细的 (85)	limit / lɪmɪt / v. 限制,限定	(94)
redesign /ˌriːdɪˈzaɪn/ v.重新设计 (85)	n.限度;限制	
	86)	excitement / ik'saitmənt / n.激动;令人激	
balloon /bəˈluːn/ n.气球;热气球 (86)	动的事	(94)
gun /gʌn/ n.枪,炮 (86)	launch /lɔːntʃ/ v.发射;发起;发行	(95)
robot /'rəubaɪt/; /'rəubat/ n.机器人 (86)	beyond /bɪˈjɑːnd/; /bɪˈjɒnd/ prep.超出;	
* /	86)	除之外	(95)
•	87)		
	87)	Topic 3 China is the third nation	that
v.做记号,做标记		sent a person into space	•
•	88)	prove /pruːv/ v.证明,证实	(97)
man-made adj.人造的;非天然的 (88)	lunar probe /prəub/ 月球探测器	(97)
		legend /'ledʒənd/ n.传说,传奇故事	(97)
Topic 2 I'm excited about the things the		significance /sig nifikəns/ n.重要性,意义	
will be discovered in the future	e.	independently / indi pendentli / adv.独立地	1,
display /dɪˈspleɪ/ v.显示,显露;展示 (90)	自主地	(98)



landmark /ˈlændmɑː(r)k/ n.里程碑;陆	标(98)	一定会	(103)
spacewalk /'speɪswɔːk/ n.太空漫步	(98)	for certain 肯定,确定,无疑	(103)
electronic/I,lek'tra:nIk/; /I,lek'tronIk/	adj.	on one's own 独自,单独	(103)
电子的	(99)	warn /wɔː(r)n/ v.警告,告诫	(103)
spacesuit /'speissuit; 'speissjuit / n.航天	服	might /maɪt/ modal v.可以,可能	(104)
	(100)	housework / hauswax(r)k/ n.家务劳动。	,家务事
telescope / telɪskəup/ n.望远镜	(100)		(104)
entertainment / entə(r) 'teɪnmənt/ n.娱	乐;	Review of Units 3-4	
招待	(101)	waitress / weitrəs/ n.女服务员	(105)
doubt /daut/ n.& v.怀疑,疑惑	(101)	magazine /ˈmæqəziɪn/; /ˌmæqəˈziɪn/ n	` ′
no doubt 无疑地	(101)	magazino , mogezini, , , , mogezini,	(105)
tiny /'taɪni/ adj.极小的,微小的	(101)	rooster /ˈruːstə(r) / n.公鸡	(105)
inside / in said/ prep.在内;在里	(101)	wife /waif/ n.妻子,太太	(105)
adv. 在里面		chick /tʃɪk/ n.小鸡	(105)
normally /'nɔː(r)məli/ adv.通常,正常情况	下	paint /peint / n.油漆;油漆涂层	(105)
	(101)	v. 在······刷油漆;用颜料画	(103)
brain /breɪn/ n.脑;智力;脑力	(101)	struggle /'strʌgl/ v.奋斗;努力;争取	(105)
cancel /ˈkænsl/ v.取消,撤销;废止	(101)	palace /ˈpæləs/ n.王宫,宫殿	(106)
workplace /ˈwɜː(r)kpleɪs/ n.工作场所	(101)	the Summer Palace 颐和园	(106)
connect /kəˈnekt/ v.连接;把·····联系起来	(101)	tower /ˈtauə(r)/ n.塔	(106)
for instance 例如	(101)	prison / prɪzn/ n. 监狱	(106)
besides /bɪˈsaɪdz/ adv. 而且, 再说	(102)	prisoner / priznə(r) / n. 囚犯;俘虏	(106)
<i>prep.</i> 除之外(还)		vocabulary /vəˈkæbjəleri/; /vəˈkæbjəl	, ,
properly /'pro:pərli/; /'propəli/ adv.		词汇 ; 词汇量	(107)
正确地,恰当地	(102)	a bunch /bʌntʃ/ of 一束;一串	(108)
servant /'s3:(r)vənt/ n.仆人,佣人	(103)	a banon rounty of the	(100)
certain /ˈsɜː(r)tn/ adj.确定的,无疑的;	;		

说明:本词汇表音标根据《牛津高阶英汉双解词典》(第6版)标注。



Vocabulary 词汇表

注:黑体词为《英语课程标准》要求掌握的词,白体词为课文中要求理解的词。 单词后的数字是指此词第一次出现的页码。本词汇表采用 IPA (International Phonetic Alphabet 国际音标)标注系统。

Impliance Hwellw/w/xxxxx0	astronaut /ˈæstrənɔːt/ n.宇航员	(91)	
A		at times 有时;间或	(67)
ability /əˈbɪləti/ n.能力;才能	(73)	avoid /ə'vɔɪd/ v.防止,避免	(41)
abroad /əˈbrɔːd/ adv.在国外;到国外	(8)	awful /ˈɔːfl/ adj.很坏的,极讨厌的	(29)
a bunch /bʌntʃ/ of 一束;一串	(108)	awith 7 54117 day, 1820 His , 1820 JOCHS	(2))
•	` ′	В	
accent /ˈæksənt/; /ˈæksent/ n.口音,腔调	(71)	balloon /bəˈluːn/ n.气球;热气球	(86)
according /əˈkɔː(r)dɪŋ/ to 据所说,	/>	base /beis/ n. 根据;根基;总部	(59)
按所报道	(22)	v.以为基础(或根据)	(39)
achieve /ə¹t∫iːv/ v.达到,获得;成功	(76)		(21)
acid /ˈæsɪd/ rain 酸雨	(47)	basic / beisik/ adj.基本的,基础的	(21)
action/ˈæk∫n/ n.行动;行为	(45)	battery /ˈbætri/; /ˈbætəri/ n.电池	(44)
actually /ˈæktʃuəli/ adv.的确,事实上	(77)	beach /bi:t∫/ n.海滩,海滨	(26)
admire /ədˈmaɪə(r) / v.钦佩,羡慕	(91)	bear /beə(r) / v.承受,忍受	(29)
Africa /ˈæfrɪkə/ n.非洲	(2)	bee /biː/ n.蜜蜂	(27)
after all 毕竟;归根结底	(46)	be harmful to (尤指对健康或环境)有害的	
agreement /əˈɡriːmənt/ n. 同意;一致;协议	, ,	导致损害的	(30)
airplane /ˈeəpleɪn/ n. 飞机	(83)	behavior /bɪˈheɪvjə(r) / n.行为,举止	(38)
alien /'eɪliən/ n.外星人	(90)	bell /bel/ <i>n</i> .钟(铃)声;铃,钟	(1)
	(90)	be pleased with 对感到高兴;	
adj. 陌生的;外国的;外星的	(- 4)	满意于	(56)
allow /əˈlaʊ/ v.允许,准许	(54)	besides /bɪˈsaɪdz/ adv. 而且, 再说	(102)
aloud /əˈlaud/ adv.大声地	(73)	<i>prep.</i> 除之外(还)	
already /ɔːlˈredi/ adv.已经,早已	(6)	be similar to 与相似,与相像	(57)
although /ɔːlˈðəʊ/ conj.虽然,尽管,即使	(35)	best-known 最知名的	(47)
ancient / eɪn∫ənt / adj.古代的;古老的	(67)	beyond /bɪˈjɑːnd/; /bɪˈjɒnd/ prep.超出;	
anybody /'eniba:di/; /'enibadi/ pron.		除之外	(95)
任何人,无论谁	(52)	billion /'bɪljən/ num.十亿	(11)
artist/ˈɑː(r)tɪst/ n.艺术家,(尤指)画家	(18)	biogas /ˌbaɪəʊˈgæs/ n.沼气	(47)
as a matter of fact 事实上,其实	(17)	bite /bart/ v.咬;叮	(49)
ask for a ride 搭乘,搭车	(63)	blanket /ˈ blæŋkɪt / n.毛毯,毯子	(39)
as long as 只要	(75)	block /bla:k/; /blok/ n.街道(区);(方形	平面)

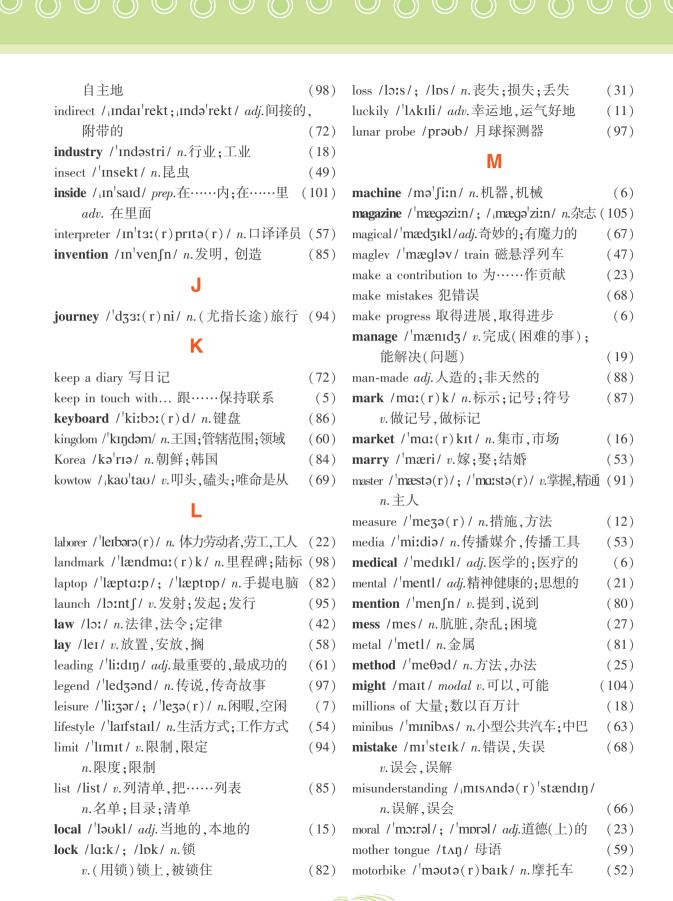
0000				
------	--	--	--	--

大块	(17)	club /klʌb/ n.俱乐部	(20)
blood /blʌd/ n. íll	(33)	coal /kəul/ n.煤;煤块	(33)
board /bɔː(r)d/ v.上(船、火车、飞机等	` /	colleague /ˈkɑːliːɡ/; /ˈkɒliːɡ/ n.同事,同僚	(52)
住宿	(64)	college /ˈkɑːlɪdʒ/;/ˈkɒlɪdʒ/ n.(美国)大学	. /
bored /bɔː(r)d/ adj.厌倦的,烦闷的	(80)	(英国)学院	(24)
bow /bau/ v.点头,鞠躬	(65)	communicate /kəˈmjuːnɪkeɪt / v.沟通,交流	
brain /brein/ n.脑;智力;脑力	(101)	communication /kəˌmjuːnɪˈkeɪʃn/ n.通讯	
brainstorm /ˈbreɪnstɔː(r)m/ v.集思广益	` /	交流; 交往	(5)
动脑筋	(85)	company /ˈkʌmpəni/ n.公司	(79)
breath /breθ/ n.一次吸入的空气	(30)	compare /kəmˈpeə(r) / v.比较,对比	(67)
breathe /brixð/ v.呼吸	(29)	compare to 把······比作······	(67)
Britain / britn/ n.英国;不列颠	(61)	completely /kəmˈpliːtli/ adv.彻底地;完整地	(36)
British /ˈbrɪtɪʃ/ adj.英国的,英国人的	(69)	composition / kampə zı ʃn/; / kmpə zı ʃ	. /
bulb /bAlb/ n.电灯泡	(83)	n.作文;作曲;构成	(72)
butterfly /ˈbʌtə(r) flaɪ/ n.蝴蝶;蝶泳	(27)	concentrate /ˈkɑːnsntreɪt/; /ˈkɒnsntreɪt/	
	(=,)	集中(注意力),聚精会神	(80)
C		conference /ˈkɑːnfərəns/; /ˈkɒnfərəns/	(00)
can /kæn/ n.(美)罐子;罐头	(43)	<i>n</i> .(正式的)会议;商谈	(60)
cancel /ˈkænsl/ v.取消,撤销;废止	(101)		(101)
capital /ˈkæpɪtl/ n.首都;资本	(16)	consider /kənˈsɪdə(r) / v.认为,以为;考虑到	,
carbon dioxide /ˈkɑː(r)bən daɪˈɑːksaɪd	` ′	context / ka:ntekst/; / kontekst/ n.上下文	
二氧化碳	(39)	语境;背景	(22)
cartoon /kaː(r) ˈtuːn/ n.漫画	(55)	continue /kənˈtɪnjuː/ v.持续,继续做	(24)
cellphone /'selfəun/ = mobile phone	` /	contribution /¡kaɪntrɪˈbjuːʃn/; /ˌkɒntrɪˈbjuː	` ′
n.移动电话,手机	(6)	n. 贡献;捐款	(23)
cent /sent/ n.分	(70)	conversation / kaːnvərˈseɪʃn/; / kɒnvəˈseɪ	
certain /ˈsɜː(r)tn/ adj.确定的,无疑的	;	n.对话;谈话	(57)
一定会	(103)	cookbook / kukbuk/ n.烹饪书,烹饪菜谱	(70)
change into 转换成,变成	(35)	copy /ˈkɑːpi/; /ˈkɒpi/ v.抄写;复印	(72)
chant /t∫ænt/; /t∫ɑːnt/ n.重复唱的歌	词;	courage /ˈkɜːrɪdʒ/; /ˈkʌrɪdʒ/ n.勇气;胆略	(67)
圣歌	(75)	crayon /ˈkreɪən/ n.彩色铅笔(粉笔、蜡笔)等	(85)
character /ˈkærəktə(r)/ n.(书、剧本、电	影等	create /kriˈeɪt/ v.造成;创造	(33)
中的)人物,角色;(汉)字,字体;品格	(55)	creature /ˈkriːtʃə(r) / n.生物;动物	(67)
chemistry / kemɪstri / n.化学;化学物质	(18)	cruel /kruːəl/ adj. 残酷的,冷酷的	(22)
chess /t∫es/ n.国际象棋	(7)	cultural /ˈkʌltʃərəl/ adj.文化的	(26)
chest /t∫est/ n.胸部,胸膛	(29)	cut down 砍倒	(28)
chick /tʃɪk/ n.小鸡	(105)	D	
cinema /ˈsɪnəmə/ n.电影院	(10)	D	
cloth /klɔːθ/;/klɒθ/ n.织物,布料	(45)	dancer /'dænsə(r)/; /'dɑːnsə(r)/ n.跳缘	舞者,



舞蹈演员	(91)	dry /draɪ/ adj.干燥的,雨少的;干性的	(49)
dare /deə(r)/ modal v.敢,敢于	(71)	v. 使·····干;弄干,擦干	(94)
deaf /def/ adj.聋的	(31)	_	
deep /dirp/ adj.深的;厚的	(48)	E	
adv.深深地;在深处		earn /3:(r)n/ v.挣钱;挣得,赢得	(21)
department / dr par(r)tment / store 百货公司	(10)	easily /ˈiːzəli/ adv. 容易地,轻易地	(77)
describe /dɪˈskraɪb/ v.描述;形容;把·····	•	editor /ˈedɪtə(r)/n.主编,编辑	(30)
称为	(90)	effect / I fekt / n.影响,结果;效果	(21)
desert /ˈdezə(r)t/ n.沙漠	(35)	effective / I'fektiv / adj.有效的,产生预期	(21)
/dr ^l z31(r)t/ v.舍弃,遗弃		效果的	(77)
destroy /dɪˈstrɔɪ/ v.摧毁,破灭	(28)	efficient / I'fɪʃnt / adj.效率高的,有能力的	(47)
detailed /dr'teɪld/;/'dixteɪld/ adj.详细的	(85)		
development / dr veləpmənt / n.发展;开发	(23)	electric /ɪˈlektrɪk/ adj.用电的;电动的	(47)
dialog /'daɪəlɔːg/; /'daɪəlɒg/ n.对话,对台	(72)	electricity /ɪˌlekˈtrɪsəti/ n.电;电能	(45)
diameter /dar'æmɪtə(r) / n.直径	(93)	electronic/I,lek'tra:nik/; /I,lek'tronik/ a	
diary /ˈdaɪəri/ n.记事簿;日记,日记簿	(72)	电子的	(99)
difference /ˈdɪfrəns/ n.差别;差异	(54)	elevator / eliveitə(r) / n. 电梯;升降机	(69)
differently / dɪfrəntli / adv.不同地,有差异地	(67)	emperor / empərə(r) / n.皇帝	(67)
dig /dɪɡ/ v.掘(地);凿(洞);挖(土)	(58)	encourage /ɪnˈkɜːrɪdʒ/; /ɪnˈkʌrɪdʒ/ v.鼓励	J (23)
digital /'dɪdʒɪtl/ adj.数码的,数字的	(82)	engineer /ˌendʒɪˈnɪə(r) / n.工程师,设计师	(20)
directly /dəˈrektli/adv.直接地	(39)	entertainment / entə(r) 'teɪnmənt/ n.娱乐	;
disabled /dɪs'eɪbld/ adj.残疾的,残废的	(3)	招待	(101)
disadvantage / disəd'væntid3/; / disəd'va		environmental /ɪnˌvaɪrənˈmentl/ adj.环境的	(31)
n. 不利因素;障碍;不便之处	(47)	escape /ɪˈskeɪp/ v.渗出;逃跑;逃脱	(39)
disagreement / dɪsəˈgriːmənt / n.分歧;争论	(44)	European /ˌjʊ(ə)rəˈpiːən/ adj.欧洲的	(60)
discourage /dɪsˈkɜːrɪdʒ/; /dɪsˈkʌrɪdʒ/ v.		evaluate /ɪˈvæljueɪt/ v.估值,评价,评估	(85)
阻拦,阻止;使灰心	(15)	ever /'evə(r)/ adv.在任何时候,从来	(4)
discover /dɪˈskʌvə(r) / v.发现,找到	(41)	<pre>everybody /'evriba:di/; /'evribadi/</pre>	
discussion /dɪˈskʌʃn/ n. 讨论,谈论,商讨	(75)	pron.人人,每个人	(38)
display /dr'spleɪ/ v.显示,显露;展示	(90)	exactly /ɪgˈzæktli/ adv. 精确地, 确切地	(75)
distance / distans/ n.距离	(45)	examine /ɪgˈzæmɪn/ v.检查,调查	(53)
disturb /dr'sta:(r)b/ v.打扰;扰乱	(31)	excellent / 'eksələnt / adj.优秀的,杰出的	(16)
divide /dɪˈvaɪd/ v.分,划分	(58)	excessive /ikˈsesiv/ adj.过度的;过分的	(54)
divide into 把·····分成······	(58)	excitement / ik'saitmənt / n.激动;令人激	(31)
do harm to 伤害,损害	(31)	动的事	(94)
do some research 做调查	(65)	explain /ɪkˈspleɪn/ v.解释,说明	(57)
doubt /daut/ n.& v.怀疑,疑惑	(101)	explorer / ik sploirə (r) / n. 探险者,勘探者	
download /ˌdaunˈləud/ v.下载	(77)		
drug /drʌg/ n.毒品;药,药物	(21)	expression / ɪk spre ʃn / n.词语;表达;表情	(69)

F		harmful / hɑː(r) mfl/ adj.有害的	(30)
(/folto/ · 株吉 株吉和	(6)	hearing /ˈhɪərɪŋ/ n.听力,听觉	(31)
fax /fæks/ n.传真;传真机	(6)	helper /ˈhelpə(r) / n.帮手,助手	(20)
film-maker 电影制作人	(56)	here and there 在各处;到处	(37)
final / faɪnl / adj. 最终的, 最后的	(71)	hide /haɪd/ v.躲藏;遮挡;隐瞒	(7)
flight /flaɪt / n. 航班飞机;空中航行	(63)	hide-and-seek /ˌhaɪd n ˈsiːk/ n.捉迷藏游戏	(7)
fold /fəuld/ v.折叠;包	(80)	high blood pressure /ˈpre∫ə(r) / 高血压	(33)
for certain 肯定,确定,无疑	(103)	hip /hip/ n.臀部;髋	(65)
foreign /ˈfɔːrən/; /ˈfɒrən/ adj.外国的	(59)	historical /hɪˈstɔː(r)rɪkl/; /hɪˈstɒrɪkl/ adj.(
foreigner /'fɔ:rənə(r)/; /'forənə(r)/ n .		历史的	(54)
外国人	(56)	hole /həul/ n.洞,坑	(39)
for instance 例如	(101)	homeless /ˈhəʊmləs/ adj.无家的	(19)
form /fɔ:(r)m/ v.(使)出现;(使)形成	(39)	homelessness / ˈhəʊmləsnəs / n.无家可归	(21)
n. 种类;形式	()	honest /ˈɑːnɪst/; /ˈɒnɪst/ adj.诚实的,	(< -)
from now on 从今往后,从现在开始	(55)	老实的;坦率的	(67)
G		honor /'aɪnər/; /'pnə(r) / n.尊敬,荣幸 v.给予表扬(或者奖励、头衔、称号);	(75) 尊敬.
garage /gəˈrɑːʒ/; /ˈɡærɑːʒ/ n.停车房;车库	(56)	尊重	,
garbage /ˈgɑː(r) bɪdʒ/ n.(生活) 垃圾,废		housework / hauswax(r)k/ n.家务劳动,家	务事
垃圾场	(15)	()	(104)
gasoline /ˈɡæsəliːn/ n.汽油	(52)	huge /hjuːdʒ/ adj.巨大的,极多的	(16)
generally / dʒenrəli/ adv.一般地,通常	(94)	human /ˈhjuːmən/ adj. 人的 n.人	(21)
German /ˈdʒɜː(r)mən/ n.德国人;德语	(47)	human being /'biːɪŋ/ n.人	(35)
get on 上车	(63)	hurry/ˈhɜːri/;/ˈhʌri/ v.& n. 赶快,匆忙	(44)
give sb. a ride 让某人搭便车	(63)	hurry up 赶快,快点	(44)
give up 放弃	(44)		
god /gaːd/; /gɒd/ n.上帝;神	(93)	1	
goodness / 'gudnəs/ n.天啊;啊呀	(28)	imagination /ɪˌmædʒɪˈneɪ∫n/ n.想像力;想像	(86)
goods /gudz/ n.商品;货品	(54)	imitate /'ɪmɪteɪt / v.模仿,仿效	(78)
government /ˈgʌvə(r)nmənt/ n.政府,内阁	图 (13)	immediately /ɪˈmiːdiətli/ adv.立刻,立即	(20)
granddaughter /ˈgrændɔːtə(r)/ n.(外)孙梦	ζ (72)	conj.—······就,即刻	
gravity /ˈɡrævəti/ n.重力;引力	(93)	importance /ɪm'pɔː(r)tns/ n.重要性,重要	(24)
guide /gaɪd/ n.向导,导游;指南,手册	(47)	<pre>impossible /im'passbl/; /im'possbl/ ad</pre>	j.
guidebook / 'gaɪdbuk/ n.旅游指南(或手册)	(63)	不可能存在的;不可能的	(57)
gun /gʌn/ n.枪,炮	(86)	including /ɪnˈkluːdɪŋ / prep.包括在内	(31)
н		increase /ɪnˈkriːs/ v.(使)增加,(使)增大 /ˈɪŋkriːs/ n.增加,增多,增大	(11)
hardly /'haː(r)dli/ adv.几乎不	(26)	indeed /In dixd/ adv.真正地;实际上	(25)
hard-wearing adj.耐磨的	(84)	independently / indi pendentli / adv.独立均	
O W	(/	1	— ₇





N	ozone layer /ˈəuzəun ˈleɪə(r) / 臭氧层 (39)
narrow / nærəu/ adj.狭窄的 (5)	P
native /'nertiv/ adj.出生地的,当地的 (59)	package /ˈpækɪdʒ/ n.一包,一袋,一盒 (54)
natural /ˈnætʃrəl/ adj.天然的;天生的 (13)	v. 将······包装好
nearby /ˈnɪəˈbaɪ/ adj.附近的,邻近的 (10)	pain / peɪn / n.疼,痛,痛苦 (29)
adv. 在附近, 不远	paint /peɪnt / n.油漆;油漆涂层 (105)
nearly /ˈnɪəli/ adv. 几乎,将近 (41)	v. 在 · · · · · 刷油漆 ; 用颜料画
negative / negativ/ adj. 负面的,消极的 (67)	palace /ˈpæləs/ n.王宫,宫殿 (106)
newborn /ˈnuɪbɔɪrn/; /ˈnjuɪbɔɪn/ adj.新生的,	paragraph /'pærəgræf/; /'pærəgræf/
初生的 (14)	n.段;段落 (13)
nobody /ˈnəubədi/ pron.没有人	path /pæθ/; /pɑːθ/ n.道路;途径 (47)
n.小人物,无足轻重的人 (38)	peacock /'piːkɑːk/; /'piːkɒk/ n.雄孔雀 (68)
nod /naːd/; /nɒd/ v.点头 (44)	percent /pə(r) sent/ n.百分之······ (14)
no doubt 无疑地 (101)	perhaps /pə(r) hæps/ adv.可能,大概 (38)
none /nʌn/ <i>pron</i> .没有一个;毫无 (37)	period / pɪəriəd/ n.一段时间,时期 (21)
normally /ˈnɔː(r)məli/ adv.通常,正常情况下(101)	per /pə(r) / <i>prep</i> .每,每一 (47)
notebook /ˈnəʊtbʊk/ n.笔记本 (72)	phrase /freiz/ n.短语,词组 (22)
nowhere /ˈnəʊweə(r)/ adv.无处;哪里都不 (38)	planet /'plænɪt/ n.行星 (34)
nuclear / nu:kliə(r)/; / nju:kliə(r)/	planter / plæntə(r)/; / pla:ntə(r)/ n.种植园主
adj.原子核的,原子能的;核动力的 (47)	(49)
0	plastic /ˈplæstɪk/ adj.塑料的 (43)
0	pleased /pli:zd/ adj. 高兴的 (6)
object /'aːbdʒekt/; /'pbdʒɪkt/ n.物品,东西;	plenty /'plenti/ pron. 大量, 众多, 充足 (26)
目的,目标 (73)	n. 充足,大量
offer/ˈɔːfə(r)/; /ˈɒfə(r)/ v.提供(东西	plenty of 大量的 (26)
或机会);主动提出 (14)	policy /ˈpɑːləsi/; /ˈpɒləsi/ n.政策,方针 (11)
on business 出差 (57)	pollute /pə'luɪt / v . 污染 (28)
on one's own 独自,单独 (103)	population / parpju'leIfn/; / popju'leIfn/
on purpose 故意,有意地 (21)	n.人口,人数 (11)
onto /ˈɑɪntə/; /ˈɒntə/ prep. 向,朝 (31)	position /pə'zɪ∫n/ n. 位置;方位 (61)
opportunity /¡aɪpərˈtuɪnəti/; /ˌɒpəˈtjuɪnəti/	positive /'pɑːzətɪv/; /'pɒzətɪv/ adj.正面的;
n.机会,时机 (14)	乐观的 (67)
oral /ˈɔːrəl/ adj. 口头的 (71)	pour / poi(r) / v.倒出;倾泻;不断流出 (27)
organization /¡ɔɪrgənəˈzeɪʃn/; /ˌɔɪgənaɪˈzeɪʃn/	powerful /ˈpaʊə(r) fl/ adj.强大的;
n.组织;团体;机构 (43)	有权势的;有影响力的 (61)
ought to /'ɔ:t tu/ modal v. 应该 (45)	praise / preiz / v. & n. 表扬, 赞扬 (65)
outer space 外层空间 (90)	preview / 'priːvjuː/ v. 预习;预告 (75)
oxygen /ˈɑːksɪdʒən/; /ˈɒksɪdʒən/ n.氧气 (39)	pride /praɪd/ n.骄傲,自豪 (68)



primary / praimeri/; / praimeri/ adj./		real /ˈriːəl/ adj.真实的,实际存在的;真正的	
教育的;主要的;最初的	(23)	realize /ˈriːəlaɪz/; /ˈriəlaɪz/ v. (realise Br	
print / print / v.印刷	(31)	意识到,领会;实现	(91)
prison / prizn/ n.监狱	(106)	recent /ˈriːsnt / adj. 近来的,最近的	(8)
prisoner /ˈprɪznə(r) / n.囚犯;俘虏	(106)	recently /ˈriːsntli/ adv.不久前;最近	(31)
probably /ˈprɑːbəbli/; /ˈprɒbəbli/ adv.	(0)	recycle / ˈriːˈsaɪkl/ n. 回收利用;再利用	(43)
很可能,大概	(9)	redesign / ri:dɪ'zaɪn/ v.重新设计	(85)
process /ˈprɑːses/; /ˈprəʊses/n.步骤,过		reduce /rɪˈduɪs/; /rɪˈdjuɪs/ v.减少;减轻	(36)
v. 加工,处理	(47)	refer /rɪˈfɜː(r)/ to 提到,涉及,有关	(40)
produce /prəˈduɪs/; /prəˈdjuɪs/	()	reform /rɪˈfɔː(r)m/ n.改革,改良	(6)
v.生产,制造	(29)	reform and opening-up 改革开放	(6)
product /'pra:dʌkt/; /'prɒdʌkt/ n.产品		relative / relətiv/ n.亲属,亲戚	(5)
制品	(54)	remove /rɪˈmuːv/ v.去除,使消失;移开	(49)
program / prougræm / n. 计划,方案;节目	(19)	renewable /rɪˈnuːəbl/; /rɪˈnjuːəbl/ adj.	
progress / 'pra:gres/; / 'prəugres/ n.进步	(6)	可更新的,可再生的	(47)
v.进展;逐步发展	a. \$.	replace /rɪˈpleɪs/ v.代替,取代	(49)
project / 'pradʒekt / ; / 'prodʒekt / n. 专题研		report /rɪˈpɔː(r)t/ n.& v.报告,汇报	(5)
项目;方案	(23)	require /rɪˈkwaɪə(r)/ v.需要;要求	(47)
pronounce /prəˈnaʊns/ v.发音,读(音)	(72)	research /rɪˈsɜː(r)tʃ/ n.研究,调查,探索	(65)
pronunciation /prəˌnʌnsɪˈeɪ∫n/ n.发音	(69)	resource /ˈriɪsɔɪrs/; /rɪˈsɔɪs/ n.资源;财力	(41)
properly / 'prɑːpərli/; / 'prɒpəli/ adv.		respect /rɪˈspekt/ v. 尊敬,尊重	(24)
正确地,恰当地	(102)	retell /ˌriːˈtel/ v.复述,重新讲述	(72)
protection /prə'tek∫n/ n.保护;防卫	(43)	reuse / riː juːz/ v.再次使用;重复使用	(41)
prove /pruːv/ v.证明,证实	(97)	review /rɪ'vjuː/ v.复习;回顾	(75)
pull /pul/ v.拉;拽;扯;拖	(80)	n.复习;复查;评论	
punish /ˈpʌnɪʃ/ v.处罚,惩罚	(38)	rise /raɪz/ v.上升;起床;升起	(39)
puzzled /'pʌzld/ adj. 困惑的	(66)	robot /ˈrəubaɪt/; /ˈrəubɒt/ n.机器人	(86)
Q		rocket /ˈrɑːkɪt/; /ˈrɒkɪt/ n.火箭	(81)
		Roman / rəumən/ adj.古罗马的,古罗马帝国的	
quality /ˈkwɑːləti/; /ˈkwɒləti/ n.质量;		rooster /ˈruɪstə(r) / n.公均	(105)
品质;人品	(54)	root /ruːt / n.起源,根源;根;词根	(59)
R		rope /rəup/ n.绳子,绳索	(4)
	(20)	rubbish /ˈrʌbɪʃ/ n.垃圾;废弃物	(37)
radiation / reɪdɪ'eɪʃn/ n.放射,放射物	(39)	rude /ruːd/ adj. 无理的, 粗鲁的	(38)
radio /ˈreɪdiəu/ n.收音机	(7)	run out 用完,耗尽	(48)
rapid /ˈræpɪd/ adj.迅速的,快速的	(6)	Russia /ˈrʌʃə/ n.俄罗斯	(12)
rapidly / ræpɪdli / adv. 快速地, 迅速地	(6)	2200000 / 111J 0 / 100 [JA/2 /9]	(12)
reach /ri:t∫/ v.实现;达到;够得着;到达	(11)		

S		spare /speə(r) / adj.空闲的;空余的 speaker /'spiːkə(r) / n.讲(某种语言)的	(7) 人;
sand /sænd/ n.沙 (3	35)	发言者	(59)
sandstorm / sændstor(r) m/ n.沙暴 (3	35)	spelling / spelɪŋ/ n.拼写;拼法	(69)
satellite /ˈsætəlaɪt / n.卫星 (8	31)	spit /spit/ v.吐,唾	(37)
satisfy /ˈsætɪsfaɪ/ v.使满意,使满足 (6)	steal /stiːl/ v.偷,窃取	(21)
screen /skriːn/ n.屏幕;银幕 (9	00)	steam /stirm/ n.水蒸气,蒸汽;水汽	(48)
secret /ˈsiːkrət/ n.秘密 (6	66)	steel /stiːl/ n.钢,钢铁	(47)
secretary /'sekrəteri/; /'sekrətri/ n.秘书 (2	20)	stick to (doing) sth. 坚持(做)某事	(75)
see off 为······送行;送别 (6	53)	storm /stɔː(r)m/n.风暴,暴(风)雨	(93)
sentence /'sentəns/ n. 句子;判决,宣判 (3	32)	stranger /'streɪndʒə(r)/ n.陌生人	(63)
seriously /ˈsɪəriəsli/ adv.严重地;严肃地 (5	54)	straw /strox/ n.(收割后干燥的)禾秆,稻草	(47)
servant /'sɜː(r)vənt/n.仆人,佣人 (10	03)	struggle /'stragl/ v.奋斗;努力;争取	(105)
several /'sevrəl/ det.& pron.几个,数个 (2	27)	succeed in doing sth. 成功地做了某事	(6)
shame /∫eɪm/ n.羞耻,羞愧 (2	27)	sunbathe /'sʌnbeɪð/ v.沐日光浴;晒太阳	(26)
shelter /ˈʃeltə(r) / n.收容所;遮蔽物 (2	21)	sunlight /'sʌnlaɪt/ n.阳光,日光	(48)
shortage /ˈʃɔː(r)tɪdʒ/ n.不足;缺少;短缺 (4	1)	sunshine /'sʌnʃaɪn/ n.阳光,日光	(26)
shut /ʃʌt/ v.关闭,关上 (4)	supply /səˈplaɪ/ v.提供,供应	(13)
shut off 停止,关掉 (4	15)	n.供应量;补给;供应	
significance /sɪg'nɪfɪkəns/ n.重要性,意义 (9	98)	support /sə'pɔː(r)t/ v.帮助,援助;支持	(21)
silence /ˈsaɪləns/ n.沉默;无声 (6	55)	surf /s3:(r)f/ v.(互联网上)冲浪,浏览	(26)
v. 使安静;压制		surround /səˈraʊnd/ v.围绕,环绕	(15)
silly /ˈsɪli/ adj. 愚蠢的,傻的 (8	35)	system /'sɪstəm/ n.体系,方法,制度	(88)
since /sins/ prep. 自······以后,从······以来 (6)	т	
conj.从以后;既然,因为		•	
situation /ˌsɪtʃuˈeɪʃn/ n.状况,形势,局面 (3	88)	the Summer Palace 颐和园	(106)
sleepy / sliːpi/ adj. 想睡的, 困倦的, 瞌睡的 (7	71)	take a breath 吸一口气	(73)
social /ˈsəʊʃl/ adj.社会的; 社交的 (1	3)	take away 拿走	(39)
so far 到目前为止 (1	3)	take measures to do sth.采取措施做某事	(13)
soil /sɔɪl/ n.土壤;土地 (3	80)	take place 发生,进行	(1)
solar /ˈsəʊlə(r) / system 太阳系 (9	93)	tape /teɪp/ n.磁带,录音带	(72)
	31)	technology /tek'naxlədzi/; /tek'nɒlədzi/	/
v.整理;把分类		n.技术	(47)
source /sɔɪ(r)s/ n.来源,出处;起源;源头 (4	18)	teenager / timeɪdʒə(r) / n.(13~19 岁之间的)
spaceship /'speɪs∫ɪp/ n.宇宙飞船 (8	31)	青少年	(26)
spacesuit /'speissuit;'speissjuit/ n.航天服 (10	00)	telegram /ˈtelɪɡræm/ n.电报;电文	(5)
•	08)	telescope / teliskəup/ n.望远镜	(100)
Spanish /ˈspænɪʃ/ n.西班牙语 (5	57)	term /t3:(r)m/ n.学期;词语;措辞	(18)
adj.西班牙人的;西班牙的;西班牙语的		textbook /'tekstbuk/ n.教科书,课本	(73)



thanks to 幸亏,由于	(13)	victory /ˈvɪktəri/ n.胜利	(66)
the greenhouse effect 温室效应	(39)	video /ˈvɪdiəʊ/ n.录像带;录像	(54)
thirsty /ˈθɜː(r)sti/ adj.缺水的;(口)渴的	(41)	villager /'vɪlɪdʒə(r) / n.村民,乡下人	(28)
thought /θɔːt/ n.想法,看法,主意	(85)	visitor/'vizitə(r) / n.游客;来访者;参观者	
throughout /θruːˈaʊt/ prep.遍及;贯穿	(55)	vocabulary /vəˈkæbjəleri/; /vəˈkæbjələ	
thumb /θʌm/ n.拇指	(63)	词汇;词汇量	(107)
tiny / taɪni/ adj.极小的,微小的	(101)	volleyball / vollibɔːl/; / vollibɔːl/ n.排球	(26)
tonight /təˈnaɪt/ adv.在今晚	(57)	volunteer /ˌvɒlənˈtɪə(r)/ n.志愿者	(1)
toothpaste /'tuːθpeɪst/ n.牙膏	(74)	W	
totally /ˈtəutəli/ adv.完全,全部地,整个地	(70)	**	
tourism /ˈtʊ(ə)rɪzəm;ˈtɔːrɪzəm/ n.旅游业;观光	台(60)	waitress / weitrəs / n.女服务员	(105)
tourist / 'turist/; / 'tuərist/ n.旅游者;游客	(60)	warn /wɔː(r)n/ v.警告,告诫	(103)
tower /ˈtauə(r) / n.塔	(106)	waste /weist / adj.废弃的,丢弃的,无用的	(27)
trader /ˈtreɪdə(r)/ n.商人,买卖人	(59)	v. 浪费	
training / treɪnɪŋ/ n.训练,培训	(19)	wave /weɪv/ n.挥手;招手;海浪	(48)
translate /træns'leɪt/ v.翻译	(75)	v.招手;摆手	
transportation / ¡trænspɔɪ(r) ¹teɪ∫n/ n.运输	(16)	weigh /weɪ/ v.重,有重	(93)
treatment / trixtmənt / n.疗法,治疗	(19)	weight /we(ɪ)t/ n.重量;分量	(53)
twin /twin/ adj.双胞胎之一的	(58)	whatever /wət'evə(r)/; /wɒt'evə(r)/	pron.
n. 双胞胎之一		无论什么,不管什么;任何事物	(21)
typical / tɪpɪkl/ adj.典型的,有代表性的	(66)	wheel /wirl/ n.轮,车轮,轮子	(47)
U		whenever /wen'evə(r) / conj. 无论何时,	
		在任何的时候	(63)
uncomfortable / ʌnˈkʌmftəbl / adj.使人不舒服	段的;	widely /'waɪdli/ adv.普通地;广泛地	(55)
令人不舒适的	(31)	wife /waɪf/ n.妻子,太太	(105)
underline /ˌʌndə(r) ˈlaɪn/ v.在(词语等下	•)	wild /waɪld/ adj.野的,野生的	(37)
画线;画底线标出	(68)	wisdom /'wɪzdəm/ n.智慧,精明	(68)
universe /ˈjuːnɪvɜː(r)s/ n.宇宙	(92)	workplace /'wɜː(r)kpleɪs/ n.工作场所	(101)
unpleasant / ʌn'plezənt / adj. 令人不快的;		worldwide /'wax(r)ldwaid/ adv.全世界,	,
不舒服的	(31)	世界各地	(48)
untidy /ʌnˈtaɪdi/ adj.不整洁的,凌乱的	(38)	worse /wɜː(r)s/ adj.更差的,更糟的	(13)
user /ˈjuːzə(r)/ n.使用者;用户	(37)	adv.更差,更糟	
V		worst /wɜː(r)st/adj.最差的,最糟的	(38)
V		wound /wuːnd/ n.创伤;伤口	(20)
value /ˈvæljuː/ v.重视,珍视	(21)	v. 伤, 伤害	
n. 价值		V	
various / veriəs/; / veəriəs/ adj.各种各样	的;	Y	
多姿多彩的	(5)	yet / jet / adv.还,仍	(9)



Attached Word List 附表单词

(注:本词汇表仅供参阅,不要求学生掌握)

accurately /ˈækjərətli/ adv.正确无误地; 精确地 approach /əˈprəutʃ/ n.方式,方法;接近 attributive /əˈtrɪbjətɪv/ clause 定语从句 axis /ˈæksɪs/ n.坐标轴;轴心 belong /bɪˈlɔːŋ/;/bɪˈlɒŋ/ v.属于 celestial /səˈlestʃl/;/səˈlestiəl/ body 天体 combine /kəmˈbaɪn/ v.合并;组合,联合 committee /kəˈmɪti/ n.委员会 compound /ˈkɑːmpaund/;/ˈkɒmpaund/ n. 复合词

debate /dr'beɪt/ n.辩论,争论,讨论 derivation /ˌderɪ'veɪʃn/ n.派生词 figure /ˈfɪgə(r)/ out 弄清楚,弄明白 formation /fɔː(r)'meɪʃn/ n.组成,形成 fund /fʌnd/ n.基金,专款 idiom / 'ɪdɪəm/ n. 习语,成语 indefinite /ɪn'defɪnət/ pronoun 不定代词 iron /'aɪə(r)n/ n.铁 medium / mixdiəm / adi. 中等的 pale /peɪl/ adj.浅色的:苍白的 passive /'pæsɪv/ adi.被动的 pause /pɔːz/ n.停顿,停顿的时间 v. 暂停, 停顿 possibility / parsə biləti/; / posə biləti/ n. 可能,可能性 relate /rɪˈleɪt / v.有关:涉及 roll /rəul/ v.滚动:翻转 roller /'rəʊlə(r) / skating 滑旱冰 separate /'seprət / v.(使)分开,分离 state /stert / v. 陈述,说明,声明 tense /tens/ n.(动词的)时,时态

English Names 英文姓名表

Male Names 男名

Alexander / wlig'zaində(r) / 亚历山大Elliot / 'elrət / 埃利奥特Buzz / bʌz / 巴兹
Graham / 'greɪəm / 格雷厄姆
Guglielmo / gulı'elməu / 古尔亚莫
Karl / kaɪl / 卡尔
Kris / krɪs / 克里斯
Martin / 'maɪrtn / 马丁
Neil / niɪl / 尼尔
Orville / 'ɔːvɪl / 奥维尔
Robert / 'robət / 罗伯特
Thomas / 'toməs / 托马斯
Tim / tɪm / 帝姆
Walt / wɔɪlt / 沃尔特
Wilbur / 'wɪlbə(r) / 威尔伯

Female Names 女名

Anna /ˈænə/ 安娜 Rita /ˈriːtə/ 丽塔 Sue /suː/;/sjuː/ 苏

Family Names 姓

Aldrin / 'ældrɪn/ 奥尔德林
Armstrong / 'ɑːmstroŋ/ 阿姆斯特朗
Baird / 'beɪəd/ 贝尔德
Bell /bel/ 贝尔
Benz /benz/ 本茨
Burns /bɜːnz/ 伯恩斯(彭斯)
Disney / 'dɪzni/ 迪斯尼
Edison / 'edɪsn/ 爱迪生
Marconi /mɑː'kəuni/ 马克尼
Wilson / 'wɪlsn/ 威尔逊
Wright /raɪt/ 莱特

Names of Places 地名表

Bulgaria /bʌl'geriə/;/bʌl'geəriə/保加利亚 Fairmont /ˈfeɪəmɔːnt/ 费尔蒙特 Scotland /ˈskɑːtlənd/ 苏格兰 Singapore /'sɪŋəpɔː(r)/;/'sɪŋgəpɔː(r)/ 新加坡 Sweden /'swiːdn/ 瑞典



Irregular Verbs 不规则动词表

Verb 动词 Past Tense 过去式 Past Participle 过去分词

be(am, is, are) was /wdz/, were /w3i(r)/been /bixn/ borne/box(r)n/ bear bore /box(r)/ beaten / bixtn/ beat /bixt/ beat became /bi'keim/ become /bi'kam/ become begin began /bi'aæn/ begun /bi'aan/ blew /blux/ blown /bloun/ blow broke /brauk/ broken / braukan/ break brought /broit/ brought /broxt/ bring build built /bilt/ built /bilt/

burn burnt /bɜː(r)nt/, burned /bɜː(r)nd/ burnt /bɜː(r)nt/, burned /bɜː(r)nd/

buy bought /boit/ bought /boit/

can could /kud/ —

caught /kort/ catch caught /koit/ chose /t[auz/ chosen / t [əuzn/ choose came /keim/ come /kam/ come cost /kpst/ /kpst/ cost /kpst/ cost cut /knt/ cut /knt/ cut dug /dng/ dug /dng/ dig did /did/ done /dn/ do drew /dru:/ drawn /drain/ draw

dream dreamt/dremt/, dreamed/dri:md/dreamt/dremt/, dreamed/dri:md/

drink drank / drænk/ drunk / drank/ driven / drivn/ drive drove /drəuv/ eaten /'ixtn/ eat ate /eit/ fallen / foxlen/ fall fell /fel/ fed /fed/ fed /fed/ feed feel felt /felt/ felt /felt/ fought /fort/ fought /fort/ fight found /faund/ found /faund/ find flew /flux/ flown /flaun/ fly

forget forgot /fər'qaɪt / /fə'qpt / forgotten /fər'qaɪt / /fə'qpt /

get got /qa:t//qpt/ got /qpt/



Verb 动词 Past Tense 过去式 Past Participle 过去分词

gave /geiv/ given /'qıvn/ give went /went/ gone /gon/ go grow grew /qruː/ grown /qrəun/ hang hung /hʌŋ/ hung /hʌŋ/ have(has) had /hæd/ had /hæd/ heard /hax(r)d/ heard /hax(r)d/ hear hidden / hidn/ hide hid /hid/ hold held /held/ held /held/ hurt /h31(r)t/hurt /hax(r)t/ hurt keep kept /kept/ kept /kept/ known /nəun/ know knew /nuː/ /njuː/

learnt/l3i(r)nt/, learned / l3i(r)nd/learnt/l3i(r)nt/, learned / l3i(r)nd/learnt/l3i(r)nt/

 leave
 left /left/
 left /left/

 lend
 lent /lent/
 lent /lent/

 let
 let /let/
 let /let/

 lie
 lay /leɪ/
 lain /leɪn/

light lit /lit/, lighted / lattid/ lit /lit/, lighted / lattid/

lose lost /lpst / lost /lpst / make made /meɪd / made /meɪd / may might /maɪt / —

mean meant /ment / meant /ment / met /met / met /met /

mistake mistook /mɪ'stuk/ mistaken /mɪ'steɪkən/

must must /mast/

paid /peid/ paid /peid/ pay put /put/ put /put/ put read read /red/ read /red/ ridden / ridn/ ride rode /raud/ rang /ræn/ ring rung /ran/ risen / 'rızn/ rose /rəuz/ rise ran /ræn/ run /rʌn/ run said /sed/ said /sed/ say saw /soi/ seen /sixn/ see sold /səuld/ sold /səuld/ sell sent /sent/ sent /sent/ send set /set/ set /set/ set

shake shook /ʃʊk/ shaken /ˈʃeɪkən/

Verb 动词 Past Tense 过去式

shall should /ʃvd/
shine shone /ʃvn/
show showed /ʃəvd/
shut shut /ʃʌt/
sing sang /sæŋ/
sit sat /sæt/
sleep slept /slept/

smell smelt/, smelled/smeld/

speak spoke /spəuk/ speed sped /sped/

spell spelt/spelt/, spelled /speld/

spent / spent / spend spread spread /spred/ stood /stud/ stand stole /staul/ steal stick stuck /stak/ swam /swæm/ swim took /tuk/ take taught /toxt/ teach tell /bluet/ blot thought / 02t/ think threw / 9ru: / throw

understand understood / \(\lambda nd \(\rappa \) \(\rappa nd \(\rappa nd \) \(\rappa nd \(\rappa nd \) \(\rappa nd \) \(\rappa nd \(\rappa nd \) \(\rappa nd \(\rappa nd \) \(\rappa nd \) \(\rappa nd \(\rappa nd \) \(\rappa nd \) \(\rappa nd \) \(\rappa nd \(\rappa nd \) \(\rappa nd

wake woke /wəuk/
wear wore /wɔː(r)/
will would /wud/
win won /wʌn/
write wrote /rəut/

Past Participle 过去分词

shone /\int nn/
shown /\int oun/
shut /\int at/
sung /\san/
sat /\sæt/

slept /slept/

smelt/smelt/, smelled /smeld/

spoken /'spəukən/ sped /sped/

spelt /spelt/, spelled /speld/

spent /spent/
spread /spred/
stood /stud/
stolen /'stəulən/
stuck /stʌk/
swum /swʌm/
taken /'teɪkən/
taught /tɔːt/
told /təuld/
thought /θɔːt/
thrown /θrəun/

understood / \documents but \documents \forall boots \documents \forall bottom \documents \forall \forall bottom \documents \forall bottom \documents \forall \forall bottom \documents \forall \forall \forall \forall \forall bo

_

won /wʌn/
written /ˈrɪtn/

后 记

本册教科书由北京市仁爱教育研究所依据教育部《义务教育英语课程标准(2011年版)》编写,经教育部基础教育课程教材专家工作委员会2013年审查一次性通过。

自教育部2011年7月下发《义务教育英语课程标准》(送审稿)之日起,北京市仁爱教育研究所的数十位英语教材编写专家及近百位教材编写人员在加拿大主编Jim Greenlaw博士和中方主编王德春教授、副主编杨晓钰教授的带领下,对仁爱版初中英语教材进行了深入、细致的修订改编工作。

修订后的仁爱版初中英语教材更加注重培养学生的语感和良好的语音、语调基础,使他们形成用英语进行日常交际的思维和能力;注重培养学生良好的学习习惯,提高他们自主学习的能力;注重培养学生的观察、记忆、思维、想象和创造能力,促进心智和综合人文素养的全面发展。同时,仁爱版初中英语教材还注重培养学生的爱国主义精神及跨文化交际意识,为学生的进一步学习奠定良好的基础。

在教材修订的过程中,我们所有参与教材修订的专家、教授、编写、审校人员每天坚持工作10个小时以上(包括兔年大年三十至龙年正月初九以及所有的节假日和公休日),一直连续坚持工作到教材送审截止日期的最后一天下午。我们执着的追求最后终于获得了丰厚的回报——在2012年1月31日开始的第一阶段送审(七上一七下)和2012年12月31日开始的第二阶段送审(八上一九下)的过程中,仁爱版初中英语教材均分别于2012年3月17日和2013年3月2日率先一次性通过教育部基础教育课程教材专家工作委员会审查(唯一一套无需参加2012年4月9日和2013年4月8日的再次会议复核审查),且2012年3月17日第一阶段和2013年3月2日第二阶段审查通过的唯一结论要求均是: 请参照《参谈意见自行修改》。

仁爱版初中英语教材在编写及数百次的修改、审校过程中得到了全国诸多英语教育专家、教研员和优秀一线教师的指导与帮助,其中有:王晓、李琨、陈叶瑶、陈明、宗泽、郭俊丽(按姓氏笔画排序)等同志。同时,仁爱版初中英语教材的每一次修改、审校还吸纳了很多教研员和一线教师的宝贵意见。在此,北京市仁爱教育研究所向他们表示诚挚的谢意!

由于时间的关系,教材中可能还存在不足及需要完善之处,衷心希望广大英语专家、教研员、一线教师、在校学生及学生家长等来电来函批评指正,以便下次修订时改正。

本教科书的绝大部分(99%以上)作品均为北京市仁爱教育研究所原创作品,极少部分(1%以下)选用的经典作品、图片由于无法与作者取得联系,特委托北京版权代理有限责任公司向权利人转付稿酬。请您与北京版权代理有限责任公司联系并领取稿酬。联系方式: (010)82357058/57/56



致力于用榜样的力量提升学生成绩的共享家教平台

中国家庭教育学会荣誉会员单位

985 211大学生

1对1上门辅导

找家教就像叫"代驾"一样简单 家长们都在偷偷用的家教预约神器



与优秀大学生同行,激发孩子无限潜能



◎ 微信搜索公众号: 365优教网

咨询热线: 4000-711-365

YÔUJ优教

既是找老师, 更是找榜样

家教老师全国招募中